



Never Give Up!

The

في اللغة الإنجليزية

Eagle

الصف الثالث الإعدادي

الفصل الدراسي الأول

By

Mohamed Ramadan

01129221246

دعاء قبل المذاكرة:

(اللهم إني أسألك فهم النبيين، و حفظ المرسلين، و الملائكة المقربين، اللهم
أجعل ألسنتنا عامرة بذكرك، و قلوبنا بخشيتك، و أسرارنا بطاعتك، إنك على كل
شيء قدير، حسبنا الله و نعم الوكيل.)

دعاء بعد المذاكرة:

(اللهم إني أستودعك ما قرأت و ما حفظت و ما تعلمت، فرده عند حاجتي إليه،
إنك على كل شيء قدير، حسبنا الله و نعم الوكيل.)

Contents

<u>Part 1</u>		
Module 1 Our World	Irregular Verbs	Page 3:4
	Unit 1 Visitors to Egypt	Page 5:23
	Unit 2 Books and reading	Page 24:41
	Unit 3 Festivals and special days	Page 42:57
	Review A	Page 58:62
Module 2 Achievements	Unit 4 Science and technology	Page 63:77
	Unit 5 Achievements	Page 78:93
	Unit 6 Inventors	Page 94:107
	Review B	Page 108:112
Module 3 Reaching our goals	Unit 7 All about sports	Page 113:126
	Unit 8 How we learn	Page 127:141
	Unit 9 The senses	Page 142:156
	Review C	Page 157:161
<u>Part 2</u>		
	The Reader: Black Beauty	Page 162:188
<u>Part 2</u>		
	Paragraphs and emails	Page 189:193

Irregular Verbs

is/ am	يكون	was	been	drive	يقود	drove	driven
are		were	been	eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
bear	يحمل / يلد	bore	born	fall	يسقط	fell	fallen
become	يصبح	became	become	feed	يغذي	fed	fed
begin	يبدأ	began	begun	feel	يشعر / يحس	felt	felt
bend	ينحني	bent	bent	fight	يحارب / يقاتل	fought	fought
bite	يعض / يلدغ	bit	bitten	find	يجد	found	found
bleed	ينزف	bled	bled	fly	يطير	flew	flown
blow	ينفخ / يهب	blew	blown	forbid	يُحرم	forbade forbid	forbidden forbid
break	ينكسر / يكسر	broke	broken	forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
bring	يجلب / يري	brought	brought	forgive	يسامح	forgave	forgiven
broadcast	يزيع	broadcasted broadcast	broadcasted broadcast	freeze	يُجمد / يُبرد	froze	frozen
build	يبنى	built	built	get	يحصل	got	got
burn	يحرق	burned burnt	burned burnt	give	يعطي	gave	given
burst	ينفجر	burst	burst	go	يذهب	went	gone
buy	يشترى	bought	bought	grow	ينمو	grew	grown
can	يستطيع	could	could	hang	يعلق	hung	hung
catch	يمسك	caught	caught	hang	يشنق	hanged	hanged
choose	يختار	chose	chosen	have/has	يملك / يتناول	had	had
come	يأتي	came	come	hear	يسمع	heard	heard
cost	يتكلف	cost	cost	hide	يختفي / يُخبيء	hid	hidden
cut	يقطع	cut	cut	hit	يضرب	hit	hit
deal	يتعامل	dealt	dealt	hold	يحمل / يتمسك	held	held
dig	يحفر / يحرث	dug	dug	hurt	يجرح/ يؤذي	hurt	hurt
do	يفعل	did	done	keep	يبقي	kept	kept
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn	know	يعرف / يدرك	knew	known
dream	يحلم	dreamed dreamt	dreamed dreamt	learn	يتعلم	learned learnt	learned learnt
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk	lead	يقود / يرشد	led	led
lean	يتكئ / يميل	leaned leant	leaned leant	sit	يجلس	sat	sat

leave	يترك / يغادر	left	left	sleep	ينام	slept	slept
lend	يُعير	lent	lent	speak	يتكلم / يتحدث	spoke	spoken
let	يسمح	let	let	spend	ينفق	spent	spent
lie	يكذب	lied	lied	split	ينشق / ينشطر	split	split
light	يضيء / ينير	lit lighted	lit lighted	spread	ينشر / ينتشر	spread	spread
lose	يفقد / يخسر	lost	lost	stand	يقف	stood	stood
make	يصنع	made	made	steal	يسرق	stole	stolen
may	قدّ	might	might	stick	يلتصق	stuck	stuck
mean	يعني / يقصد	meant	meant	swear	يُقسم	swore	sworn
meet	يقابل	met	met	swim	يسبح	swam	swum
mistake	يخطئ	mistook	mistaken	take	يأخذ	took	taken
pay	يدفع	paid	paid	teach	يدرس	taught	taught
put	يضع	put	put	tear	يمزق / يشق	tore	torn
read	يقرأ	read	read	tell	يخبر	told	told
ride	يركب / يمتطي	rode	ridden	think	يفكر	thought	thought
ring	يرن	rang	rung	throw	يرمي / يقذف	threw	thrown
rise	يرتفع / ينهض	rose	risen	sweep	يكنس	swept	swept
run	يجري	ran	run	upset	يزعج / يشوش	upset	upset
say	يقول	said	said	wake	يستيقظ / يوقظ	waked	waked
see	يرى	saw	seen	wake	يستيقظ / يوقظ	woke	woke
sell	يبيع	sold	sold	wear	يلبس / يرتدي	wore	worn
send	يرسل	sent	sent	weep	يبكي	wept	wept
set	يجهز/ يضع	set	set	wet	يرطب / يببل	wet	wet
shake	يهتز/ يرتجف	shook	shaken	win	يربح / يفوز	won	won
shall	سـ (سوف)	should	should	write	يكتب / يؤلف	wrote	written
shine	يشرق / يضيء	shone	shone				
shoot	يطلق الرصاص	shot	shot				
show	يظهر / يعرض	showed	shown				
shut	يغلق	shut	shut				
sing	يغني / يُغرد	sang	sung				
sink	يغرق / يغوص	sank/sunk	sunk				

Unit 1 Visitors to Egypt

Key Vocabulary

Lessons 1&2

bazaar	سوق / بازار	passport	جواز سفر
youth hostels	بيوت الشباب/نزل الشباب	equipment	معدات
youth = young people	الشباب	recommendation	توصية
souvenir	هدية تذكارية	breathe	يتنفس
windsurfing	ركوب الامواج	advise	ينصح
cheap = inexpensive	رخيص	advice	نصيحة
the tourist information centre	مركز الإستعلامات السياحية	comfortable ≠ uncomfortable	مريح ≠ غير مريح
sun cream	كريم للشمس	police station	مركز الشرطة

Extra Vocabulary

visitor	زائر	doctor's	عيادة طبيب
stay	يقيم يمكث	different places	أماكن مختلفة
windsurfing	ركوب الأمواج	Egypt	مصر
snorkelling	الغطس	direction	اتجاه
scuba diving	الغطس تحت الماء	beach	شاطئ
take photos	يأخذ صور	holiday	أجازة
activity	نشاط	cheaper	أرخص من
windy	عاصف	weather	الطقس
boat trip	رحلة بالقارب	market	سوق
modern ≠ ancient	حديث ≠ قديم	part	جزء
tourist	سائح	conversation	محادثة
hotel	فندق	definitely	بالتحديد حتما
wonderful	رائع	followed by	متبوعة ب
a great time	وقت ممتع	hurt	يؤلم - يؤذي
a good idea	فكرة جيدة	washing machine	غسالة
camp	معسكر	port	ميناء
Hurghada	الغردقة	information	معلومات (لا تعد)
outside	بالخارج	around	حول
island	جزيرة	fire	نار حريق
place	مكان	spring	الربيع
city	مدينة	canal	قناة/ ترعة
area	منطقة	younger	أصغر من

Water Sports

In the water	في الماء	On the water	على سطح الماء
snorkelling	الغطس (باستخدام أنبوب الغوص)	windsurfing	ركوب الامواج
scuba diving	الغوص (باستخدام جهاز التنفس)	sailing	الابحار
swimming	العوام	fishing	الصيد
diving	الغوص	rafting	التجديف
water gymnastics	الجمباز المائي	boating	ركوب الزوارق

Conjugations of irregular verbs

fall	يقع / يسقط	fell	fell	catch	يمسك/يلحق	caught	caught
hurt	يؤلم-يؤذي	hurt	hurt	go	يذهب	went	gone
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn	have/has	يملك	had	had
take	يأخذ	took	taken	hear	يسمع	heard	heard
buy	يشتري	bought	bought	do	يفعل	did	done
forget	ينسي	forgot	forgotten	find out	يكشف	found out	found out
teach	يعلم	taught	taught	see	يري	saw	seen

Prepositions & Expressions

take a boat trip	يذهب في رحلة بالقارب	go scuba diving	يذهب للغطس
give advice	يعطي نصيحة	walk in the sun	يمشي تحت أشعة الشمس
do activities	يقوم بأنشطة	on a bus	بالأتوبيس / في الاتوبيس
wear sun cream	يضع كريم شمس	arrive at	يصل لـ (مكان في مدينة)
for a holiday	من أجل قضاء أجازة	arrive in+دولة/مدينة	يصل لـ (مدينة/دولة)
under the water	تحت سطح الماء	catch a thief	يقبض على لص
try snorkelling	يجرب الغوص	try food	يجرب طعام
stay with + شخص	يقيم مع..	in the spring	في فصل الربيع
It's best to	من الأفضل أن	have a great time	يقضي وقت سعيد
stay in / at + مكان	يقيم في / يمكث في	fall over	يسقط يقع أرضا
in ten minutes	خلال خمس دقائق	find out about	يعرف معلومات عن
look out for	يحترس من	for too long	لمدة طويلة
do/play a sport	يلعب رياضة	in the middle of	في منتصف / في وسط
so happy to	سعيد جدا أن	a lot to do	كثير لنفعله

Confusing Words

there هناك	breathe يتنفس	save يوفر/ينقذ	hostel بيت شباب رخيص-مجاني
their ملكهم	breath النفس	safe أمن	hotel فندق (غالي الثمن)
weather الطقس	advise ينصح	hurt يؤذي	souvenir هدية تذكارية
whether لو	advice نصيحة	heart قلب	present هدية (تقدم لشخص)

journey رحله طويله	trip رحلة قصيرة أو عمل	flight رحله جوية
voyage رحله بحرية	picnic نزهه على الأقدام	tour جوله سياحية

Definitions

Youth hostels بيت الشباب	an inexpensive place where young people can stay when they are travelling
Bazaar بازار	A market or a group of shops
Windsurfing ركوب الامواج	A sport you can do on water
Snorkeling الغوص بأنبوب الغوص	Swimming with equipment so that you can breathe with your head in water.
Tourist information centre مركز المعلومات السياحية	An office where tourists can find out about a city or an area
police station قسم الشرطة	An office for people who catch thieves.

Language Notes

present هدية (نقدمها لشخص في مناسبة ما)

⇒ They gave her a lot of presents on her birthday.

souvenirs هدايا تذكارية (تذكرنا بمكان او بشيء)

⇒ Tourist can buy souvenirs at bazaars.

prize جائزة (في مسابقة/للتفوق في مجال ما)

⇒ Ahmed Zewail won the Noble Prize.

play تأتي مع الالعاب الرياضية التي تلعب بالكرة

football , hockey , tennis , volleyball, basketball, handball

go تأتي مع الرياضات تنتهي بـ ing

fishing - diving – swimming – cycling - ice skating - snorkeling

do تأتي مع الرياضات العنيفة

karate-judo- wrestling

go + v+ing**يذهب لـ**

go diving

go swimming

go scuba diving

go shopping

It is best to+ من الأفضل أن مصدر

⇒ It is best to revise early.

snorkelling الغوص بالقرب من سطح الماء باستخدام انبوب

⇒ I like snorkeling in the red Sea.

scuba diving الغوص تحت الماء مستخدماً انبوب أكسجين

⇒ We went scuba diving in Hurghada.

look for**يبحث عن**

⇒ They are looking for the book.

look after**يعتني بـ**

⇒ Mothers look after babies.

look forward to+ v.ing**يتطلع الى**

⇒ I am looking forward to visiting Mecca.

, too**أيضاً في الاثبات (آخر الجملة)**

⇒ I like football, too.

, either**أيضاً في النفي (آخر الجملة)**

⇒ She didn't eat fish, either.

Reading

Dear Catherine,

I am so happy to hear that you and your family are visiting Hurghada in the spring! It is a wonderful place for a holiday. There is a lot to do and many different places to stay. You can camp, stay in a hotel or in the new youth hostel. It is very modern and comfortable, but much cheaper than the hotels. You can find out information at the tourist information centre. You should go there when you arrive. It is next to the police station in the middle of the new part of the city.

Hurghada has some beautiful beaches. When it is windy, you should definitely try windsurfing, too. Take a boat trip to the islands around Hurghada. You can go scuba diving or snorkeling. You can also go fishing from a boat.

You shouldn't walk too much in the sun. It is best to visit places early in the morning. Don't forget to go to the bazaar in the old part of the city. It is a good place to buy souvenirs.

Have a great time!

Salma

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- The youth is less expensive than the hotel.
a. office b. station c. hostel d. bazaar
- 2- The students usually stay in a youthwhen they visit the city.
a. hotel b. hostel c. office d. bazaar
- 3- It is cold and windy, when you go outside, youa coat.
a. wear b. should wear c. shouldn't wear d. are wearing
- 4- Tourists should sun cream when it is very hot.
a. give b. cover c. wear d. go
- 5- A is a good place to buy souvenirs.
a. park b. bazaar c. temple d. festival
- 6- Tourists usually go shopping from the of Khan El.Khalili.
a. youth hostels b. bazaars c. hotels d. information
- 7- Ismailia has a cheap youth where young people can stay.
a. hotel b. hostel c. centre d. office
- 8- is a sport you can do on water.
a. Basketball b. Tennis c. Windsurfing d. Volleyball
- 9- is an underwater activity.
a. Snorkeling b. Table tennis c. Picnic d. Driving
- 10- Windsurfing is
a. a sport you can do on water b. an underwater activity
c. a sport practiced at home d. an activity can be done inside classes
- 11- A / an is an office for people who catch thieves.
a. library b. station c. police station d. store
- 12- is swimming with equipment so that you can breathe with your head in the water
a. fishing b. sailing c. windsurfing d. Snorkeling
- 13- When tourists want to know something about the country they are visiting , they go to the.....
a. tourist information centre b. Youth hostel c. police station d. bazaar
- 14- Tourists like todifferent activities when they visit sharm el.sheikh.
a. go b. make c. do d. leave
- 15- The best place to tradition English food is at a food market.
a. stay b. drink c. catch d. try
- 16- Tourists like to.....scuba diving when they visit Hurghada.
a. go b. take c. make d. buy
- 17- You can go.....from a boat.
a. running b. fishing c. shopping d. boxing

Giving Advice إعطاء النصيحة

should لتقديم نصيحة لشخص ما بأنه ينبغي عليه ان يفعل شيء ما

shouldn't لتقديم نصيحة لشخص ما بأنه لاينبغي عليه ان

مصدر } **should** فاعل
مصدر } **shouldn't** فاعل

مصدر + should + فاعل

- ⇒ You should go there when you arrive.
- ⇒ You should definitely try some windsurfing
- ⇒ You should go now. The bus goes in ten minutes.
- ⇒ Tourists should wear sun cream when it's very hot.
- ⇒ You should take an umbrella. It's raining.
- ⇒ You should tell the teacher.
- ⇒ You should do the homework quickly.
- ⇒ You should go to the doctor's.
- ⇒ You should take lots of photos.
- You should try some Egyptian food.

مصدر + Shouldn't + فاعل

- ⇒ You shouldn't walk too much in the sun.
- ⇒ you shouldn't go outside. It's raining.
- ⇒ You shouldn't look at the sun.
- ⇒ You shouldn't pour water on electrical items.
- ⇒ You shouldn't drink water from the canal.
- ⇒ You shouldn't stay in the sun too long.
- ⇒ You shouldn't watch too much television.

Complete the advice with should or shouldn't:

- 1- When you go diving, you tell people where you are going.
- 2- You..... swim too far from the boat.
- 3- Youstay under the water for too long.
- 4- You..... look out for dangerous sharks.
- 5- Yougo diving if the weather is bad.

- 6- You buy a guidebook before you go to a city for the first time.
 7- You take photos of people unless you ask them first.
 8- Look after your possessions. You leave them on a bus or train.

السؤال بمعنى هل:

Should + مصدر+فاعل?
 Yes, فاعل should. / No, فاعل shouldn't.

- **Should I wash my hands before I eat?**
 ⇒ Yes, you should.
- **Should Salma go fishing with Reham?**
 ⇒ Yes, she should. ⇒ No, she shouldn't.

السؤال بمعنى هل:

WH + should + مصدر+فاعل?
 مصدر + should فاعل

- **What should I do to be fit?**
 ⇒ You should exercise every day.

هناك طرق أخرى لإعطاء النصيحة وتساوي **shouldn't / should** في المعنى:

You should+ مصدر

You shouldn't +

I advise you to + مصدر أنصحك بأن I advise you to see a doctor.	I advise you not to + مصدر أنصحك ألا I advise you not to look at the sun
It's advisable to + مصدر من المستحسن أن It's advisable to see a doctor.	It's advisable not to + مصدر من المستحسن ألا It's advisable not to look at the sun
It's important to+ مصدر من المهم أن It's important to see a doctor.	It's important not to+ مصدر من المهم ألا It's important not to look at the sun
had better + مصدر فاعل يجب عليك You had better see a doctor.	had better not + مصدر فاعل يجب عليك ألا You had better not look at the sun.
It's a good idea to + مصدر إنها فكرة جيدة أن It's a good idea to see a doctor.	It's a good idea not to + مصدر إنها فكرة جيدة ألا It's a good idea not to look at the sun
If I were you, I 'd + مصدر لو كنت مكانك كنت If I were you, I 'd see a doctor.	If I were you, I wouldn't + مصدر If I were you, I wouldn't look at the sun
ought to + مصدر فاعل يجب أن You ought to see a doctor.	

يمكن أيضا إستبدال **shouldn't** - مصدر + to+ صفة سلبية **It's +**

You shouldn't لا يجب أن It's a bad idea to + مصدر إنها فكرة سيئة ان It's dangerous to+ مصدر من الخطر أن	You shouldn't look at the sun It's a bad idea to look at the sun It's dangerous to look at the sun
--	---

You should+ مصدر**You shouldn't +**

I advise you to + مصدر	أنصحك بأن	I advise you not to + مصدر	أنصحك ألا
It's advisable to + مصدر	من المستحسن أن	It's advisable not to + مصدر	من المستحسن ألا
It's important to + مصدر	من المهم أن	It's important not to + مصدر	من المهم ألا
فاعل had better + مصدر	يجب عليك	فاعل had better not + مصدر	يجب عليك ألا
It's a good idea to + مصدر	إنها فكرة جيدة أن	It's a good idea not to + مصدر	إنها فكرة جيدة ألا
If I were you, I 'd + مصدر	لو كنت مكانك كنت	If I were you, I wouldn't + مصدر	
فاعل ought to + مصدر	يجب أن		

- You should study hard. (advise)
⇒ I advise you to study hard.
- It is advisable for you to study hard. (should)
⇒ You should study hard.
- You shouldn't stay up late. (advise)
⇒ I advise you not to stay up late.
- You should work hard. (advisable)
⇒ It is advisable for you to work hard.
- You had better not watch too much TV. (shouldn't)
⇒ You shouldn't watch too much TV.
- Salma should try windsurfing. (important) / (had better)
⇒ It's important for Salma to try wind surfing.
⇒ Salma Had better try wind surfing.

لاحظ: في حالة وجود أسم شخص

advisable

It's important for شخص + to + مصدر = مصدر + should/shouldn't + الشخص

dangerous

- It's advisable for Ali to study hard. (should)
⇒ Ali should study hard.
- Tourists should have a guidebook. (important)
⇒ It's important for tourists to have a guidebook.

Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets:

1. I advise you to visit Hurghada. **(should)**
 ⇒
2. it is advisable for you not to swim too far from the boat. **(shouldn't)**
 ⇒
3. It is a good idea to go to the gym more often to keep fit. **(had better)**
 ⇒
4. You had better read a lot in your free time. **(advise)**
 ⇒
5. I advise you to study hard for the final exam. **(should)**
 ⇒
8. I advise you not to look at the sun. **(shouldn't)**
 ⇒
9. My advice to you is to get up early. **(shouldn't)**
 ⇒
10. You should look out for dangerous sharks. **(advise)**
 ⇒
11. If I were you, I'd read this book. **(should)**
 ⇒
12. It's better for Omar to brush his teeth. **(should)**
 ⇒
13. It is important that tourists try some Egyptian food. **(should)**
 ⇒
14. You shouldn't waste your time. **(If)**
 ⇒
15. He advises his friend to stop smoking. **(should)**
 ⇒
16. It's bad for her to spend so much time watching TV. **(She)**
 ⇒

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When you go diving, you tell people where you are going.
a. shouldn't b. mustn't c. should d. Can't
2. you.....swim too far from the boat.
a. shouldn't b. must c. should d. Haven't
3. Youstay in the sun too long.
a. should b. must c. Shouldn't d. can
4. You.....look out for dangerous sharks.
a. shouldn't b. mustn't c. should d. Can't

5. Yougo diving if the weather is bad.
a. shouldn't *b. must* *c. should* *d. Haven't*
6. Look after your possessions. Youleave them on a bus or train.
a. should *b. must* *c. have to* *d. shouldn't*
7. You should definitelywindsurfing.
a. try *b. trying* *c. tries* *d. tried*
8. The sun isn't very hot outside. you.....an umbrella.
a. use *b. Shouldn't use* *c. should use* *d. using*
9. You.....revise for the exam. it's my advice.
a. must *b. shouldn't* *c. have to* *d. should*
10. Youtoo much in the sun.
a. walk *b. should walk* *c. Shouldn't walk* *d. must walking*
11. You follow my advice to improve your English.
a. should *b. mustn't* *c. can't* *d. shouldn't*
12. You go now. The bus goes in ten minutes.
a. shouldn't *b. must to* *c. mustn't* *d. should*

Write what do you say in the following situations:

1- Your friend is going outside. It's raining .

⇒

2- Your friend forgot to do his homework. The lesson starts in 5 minutes.

⇒

3- Your younger sister wants to look at the sun.

⇒

4- Your friend fell over when he was playing sport. Now it hurts when he walks.

⇒

5- There is a small fire in your washing machine. Your younger brother gets some water.

⇒

6- You drop a glass on the kitchen floor. Your younger sister walks into the room.

⇒

7- You're in a busy street. Advise your sister not to cross while the traffic light is red.

⇒

8- You are in a busy street with your younger brother. You advise him not to walk too close to the road.

⇒

9- You see people throw rubbish in the street. Give advice.

⇒

Advise your friend who are entering a story writing competition.

⇒

10-Your friend wants to get high marks and asks for your advice.

⇒

11-Your younger brother starts eating his meal without washing his hands.

⇒

12-Your sister wants to know how to keep fit.

⇒

13-Your friend brother spends too much time watching TV. Advise him.

⇒

Finish the following dialogue:

Salma and Sara are talking about the summer holiday.

Salma : Where are you going to spend your summer holiday?

Sara : (1)

Salma : Fantastic. Hurghada is a very nice place. (2) ?

Sara : I'll go with my family.

Salma : How will you go there?

Sara : (3)

Salma : (4) ?

Sara : We will stay in the city hotel.

Salma : I hope you will have a nice time there.

Sara : Thank you, Salma.



Key Vocabulary

Lessons 3&4

archaeologist	عالم اثار	ancient sites	مواقع ثرية
guidebook	كتاب ارشادي	suggest	يقترح
brochure	منشور سياحي	recommend	يوصي / يذكي
guide (n / v)	يرشد / مرشد	give directions	يوضح الاتجاهات
detective	محقق - مخبر	go for a walk	يذهب للتمشية

Extra Vocabulary

passport	جواز سفر	historical	تاريخي
tourist attractions	اماكن جذب السياح	historical building	مبنى تاريخي (له علاقة بالماضي)
city	مدينة كبيرة	draw a map	يرسم خريطه
the country	الريف	Don't worry	لا تقلق
village	قرية	train ticket	تذكرة قطار
tourist	سائح	museum	متحف
clothes	ملابس	try	يحاول / يجرب
go into = enter	يدخل	start	يبدأ
map	خريطة	right	صحيح
idea	فكره	talk	يتحدث
lost	تائه / مفقود	tell	يخبر
possessions	ممتلكات	careful	منتبه / حريص
assistant	مساعد / معاون	design	يصمم
park	منتزه / حديقة عامه	encourage	يشجع
flower	زهرة	station	محطة
kind to	عطوف مع	true	حقيقي
check	يفحص / يتحقق	other ways	اخرى طرق
bring	يجلب	carry	يحمل
count	يعد	reason	سبب
building	مبنى	speak	يتحدث
pay for	يدفع اموالا من اجل شراء شيء	kind of	من نوع
traditional	تقليدي	garden	خاصة حديقة

Confusing Words

interested	مهتم	learn	يتعلم	weak	ضعيف	alone	بمفرده	loaf	رغيف
interesting	شيق	teach	يعلم	week	اسبوع	lonely	وحيدا	leaf	ورقة شجر

Conjugations of irregular verbs:

draw	يرسم	drew	drawn	think	يفكر	thought	thought
tell	يخبر	told	told	bring	يجلب	brought	brought
make	يصنع	made	made	break	يكسر	broke	broken
leave	يغادر	left	left	give	يعطي	gave	given
come	يأتي	came	come	go	يذهب	went	gone
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken	do	يفعل	did	done
take	ياخذ	took	taken	pay	يدفع	paid	paid

Prepositions & Expressions

make a suggestion	يعمل اقتراح	Give directions	يعطي إتجاهات
give advice	يعطي نصيحة	encourage + obj + to + inf	يشجع
give recommendations	يعطي توصية	sounds good	يبدو جيدا
ask for recommendations	يطلب توصية	It is best to ..+ inf.	من الأفضل أن..
a tour with a guide	جولة مع مرشد	in+ لغة (Arabic -English)	باللغة الـ
look afterيعتني بـ	for the first time	للمرة الاولى
look for	يبحث عن	do the same thing	يقوم بعمل نفس الشيء
popular with	محبوب من	make them feel bad	يجعلهم يحزنون
look up	يبحث عن كلمة في قاموس	leave them on a bus	اتركهم في الاتوبيس
look out for	يحترس من	do the shopping	يقوم بالتسوق
look at	ينظر الى	important to + inf.	مهم أن....
go shopping	يتسوق	visit a historical building	يزور مبني تاريخي
go for a walk	يذهب للتمشية	visit a garden	يزور حديقة
go on a tour	يذهب في جولة	visit a bazaar	يزور بازار
take a bus	يستقل الاتوبيس	visit the old town	يزور المدينة القديمة
take a break	ياخذ قسطا من الراحة	look forward to + v.ing	يتطلع الى
take turns	يتناوب الادوار / يتبادل	go to a concert	يذهب الى حفلة

Definitions

guidebook كتاب إرشادي	A book that gives information for visitors about the places of a country.
Brochure منشور سياحي	A small magazine that have pictures and information on a product or a company.
Assistant مساعد	A person who helps in a shop or in a ticket office
Passport جواز سفر	You need it when you visit another country
Archaeologist عالم آثار	Someone who studies ancient places .

Language Notes

إعطاء توصية لشخص

**I recommend/suggest + ^{إسم} v ing
that + فاعل + فعل**

I recommend /suggest a tour with a guide

I recommend / suggest visiting the museum

I also recommend/suggest you buy a guidebook

brochure نشرة تحتوي على معلومات عن منتج أو شركة

⇒ Tourist brochures encourage tourists to visit The Pyramids

guidebook كتاب إرشادي يقدم معلومات للزائرين/السياح عن مكان (مدينة)

⇒ I used a guidebook to get around London easily.

make+ صفة/مصدر + مفعول يجعل

⇒ We should make tourists happy/ feel happy.

advise + مصدر+ to+ مفعول ينصح بـ

⇒ I advised him to buy a a guidebook.

Feel+ صفة يشعر بـ

⇒ He felt sad when he lost his phone.

Try+ V ing/ N مصدر+ يجرب / try to يحاول

⇒ You should try windsurfing.

⇒ You should try to study hard.

Tapescript



Tarek : Look father! Those tourists are lost.

Father : Yes, we should help them. Excuse me! Do you need any help?

Woman : Oh, thank you! We are looking for the tourists information Centre.

Father : It is not far from here, but it is closed today. Can we help you?

Man : Thank you ! It is our first trip to Egypt, you see. There is so much to see and do here. We don't know what to do first! We are interested in all the ancient sites and famous places. Where do you suggest we start?

Father : I suggest that you visit the museum. It is a good place to learn all about the things you will see at the ancient sites.

Woman: That is a good idea. When we are at ancient site, do you recommend a tour with a guide?

Father : That is a very good idea. The guides can tell you a lot of interesting things about a place. I also recommend you buy a guidebook. You can buy one at the tourist information centre tomorrow when it opens.

Man : Ok. We also want to go shopping. What is the best place to buy souvenirs? Do you recommend going to the bazaar?

Tarek : Yes, you should go to the bazaar in the old part of the city. There are lots of crafts to buy there.

Woman : That sounds good. Oh, one more thing . Is there a good place to eat near the museum? It is nearly lunchtime and we are really hungry.

Father : The best place to try traditional Egyptian food is the café opposite the museum... Have a good day.

Man : You too. Thank you very much!

Work in pairs

1) Some tourists are trying to pay for something in a bazaar, but they can't understand Egyptian money. What should you do?

a- You should help the tourists to count the right money.

b- You shouldn't do anything, because you will make the tourists feel bad if you help.

2) Some tourists are lost.They're trying to find the museum.What should you do?

a- You should give them directions and draw them a map.

b- You should walk away, because someone else will come and help them.

3) A tourist has lost his bag with his camera and passport in it.What do you say?

a- "Don't worry, I'll take you to the police station."

b- "You should be more careful."

4) Some tourists are trying to buy a train ticket. The assistant at the station doesn't speak English and the tourists can't speak Arabic. What do you do?

- a) Ask them what they need and tell the assistant in Arabic.
b) You don't do anything. If they needed help, they would ask.

Language Functions

Asking for recommendations طلب توصية

1. Wh+ do you suggest فاعل + فعل؟

تقترح أن

⇒ **When do you suggest we visit Luxor?**

⇒ **Where do you suggest I buy souvenirs?**

2. What is the best way to+ مصدر؟

ما أفضل طريقة لـ

⇒ **What is the best way to learn English vocabulary?**

3. What/Where is the best place to+ مصدر؟

ما أفضل مكان لـ

4. Is there a good place to+ مصدر؟

هل يوجد مكان جيد لـ

⇒ **Where is the best place to buy souvenirs?**

⇒ **Is there a good place to buy souvenirs?**

4. Do you recommend+ N. / v ing / فاعل فعل؟

هل توصي بـ

⇒ **Do you recommend visiting the museum?**

⇒ **Do you recommend a tour with a guide?**

⇒ **Do you recommend we visit the museum?**

- You ask your friend to recommend you a place to buy souvenirs.
⇒ **Where/What is the best place to buy souvenirs?**

Giving recommendations إعطاء توصية

I recommend + إسم	I recommend a guidebook.
I recommend/suggest + V ing	I recommend visiting Luxor
I recommend/suggest that + فاعل + فعل	I recommend you visit Luxor.
The best place to+ مصدر is مكان	The best place to buy souvenirs is the bazaar.
The best way to+ مصدر is to	The best way to learn English is to listen to English songs.
You can+ مصدر	You can buy a guide book.

- Your friend asks you where to go on the mid-year holiday. Recommend a place
- Recommend a nice place for you penfriend to visit in Egypt .
⇒ **I recommend visiting Luxor / I recommend you visit Luxor/ You can visit luxor.**
- A tourist wants to buy a guidebook. Recommend a place
⇒ **I recommend the tourist information centre.**
⇒ **I recommend You buy one at the tourist information centre.**
⇒ **The best place to buy a guidebook is the tourist information centre.**

Accepting recommendations قبول توصية

That's a good idea.

That sounds good

Ok.

- A friend asks you to go to the club this weekend. You would love to go.
⇒ **Good idea. / That sounds good.**
- When you go to Luxor, I think you should visit the Museum. (recommend)
⇒ **When you go to Luxor, I recommend you visit the Museum**

Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1- Your sister wants to read a story and she asks you to recommend her one.

2- You suggest "Ali Baba" restaurant for having lunch with your friends.

3- tourist wants to buy a guidebook. Recommend a place.

4- You want to go on a picnic. Make suggestion.

5- You ask your friend about the best way to revise before the exam.

6- You are asked about the best place to buy a guidebook.

7- Your friend suggests spending this holiday in Hurghada.

Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d

1- Many tourists use a to learn about a city's history and places to visit.

- a. guidebook b. camera c. bookshop d. ticket**

2- Many tourists use a to learn about a city's history and places to visit.

- a. camera b. bookshop c. guidebook d. ticket**

3-When tourists want to know something about the country they are visiting the

- a. tourist information centre b. youth hostel c. police station d. bazaar**

- 4- The restaurant that your cousin told us about was a very good..... We loved it
a. recipe **b. recommendation** **c. souvenir** **d. advice**
- 5- You need a when you visit another country.
a. passport **b. tourist** **c. bazaar** **d. brochure**
- 6- I don't know how to get to your house. Can you give me.....?
a. activities **b. directions** **c. costumes** **d. conclusions**
- 7- Do yougoing to the park? LM
a. advise **b. ask** **c. recommend** **d. let**
- 8- The best place to tradition English food is at a food market. WB
a. stay **b. drink** **c. catch** **d. try**
- 9- The restaurant in the guidebook was a very good.....
a. review **b. information** **c. parade** **d. recommendation**
- 10- The restaurant in the guidebook was a very good
a. recommendation **b. information** **c. parade** **d. review**
- 11- I don't know how to get to the club. Can you give me?
a. activities **b. conclusions** **c. costumes** **d. directions**
- 12- In order to visit another country, You must get a
a. brochure **b. bazaar** **c. passport** **d. recipe**
- If you don't know how to find a building. You can ask for
a. diagram **b. directions** **c. costumes** **d. activities**
- 13- It is cold today. When you go outside, you wear a coat.
a. should **b. shouldn't** **c. might** **d. mustn't**
- 14- An is a person who helps in a shop or in a ticket office.
a. assistant **b. owner** **c. archaeologist** **d. actor**
- 15- If you do not know how to find a building, you can ask for
a. discoveries **b. detectives** **c. directions** **d. diagrams**
- 16- Many tourists use a..... to learn about a city's history and places to visit.
a. camera **b. bookshop** **c. guidebook** **d. ticket**
- 17- You need a..... when you visit another country.
a. passport **b. tourist** **c. bazaar** **d. brochure**
- 18- The restaurant that your cousin told us about was a very good..... .We loved it!
a. recipe **b. advice** **c. souvenir** **d. recommendation**

Finish the following dialogue

Heba is going to meet her friends today.

Mother : What are you going to do with your friends today?

Heba : We want to have a picnic but we don't know where to go,
(1)

Mother : Garden Park is a nice place for a picnic.

Heba : Yes, it is. What can I take for the picnic?

Mother : (2)

Heba : That's a good idea. Do I need my hat today, Mum?

Mother : (3)The sun is very strong today

Heba : (4)

Mother : You can go in the morning. The sun is not too hot

finish the following dialogue

best place

I recommend

Is there

suggest that

suggest that we

the best

You can

advise

Tourist: Excuse me. (1) a good place to go windsurfing near here?

Assistant: The (2) to go windsurfing is South Beach. There is more wind there than here.

Tourist: What's (3) way to get to South Beach?

Assistant: (4) take a bus. They go every 30 minutes.

Tourist: Do you (5) us to go in the morning or the afternoon?

Assistant: (6) that you go in the afternoon. The winds are better then.

Tourist: Where do you (7) stay at South Beach?

Assistant: I (8) you look at this guidebook. It recommends many good hotels

Parts of Speech

Noun (N)

إسم

Verb (V)

فعل

Adjective (Adj)

صفة

Adverb (Adv)

ظرف

Preposition(Prep)

حرف جر

بعض الكلمات من الممكن أن تكون إسما وفعلا وصفة وغير ذلك

help (N) مساعدة

help (V) يساعد

light (N) ضوء

light (V) يضيء

light (Adj) خفيف الوزن

question (N) سؤال

question (V) يسأل

tour (N) جولة

tour (V) يتجول

well (N) بئر

well (A) بصحة جيدة

well (Adv) بشكل جيد

Unit 2 Books and Reading

Key Vocabulary

Lessons 1&2

historical stories	قصص تاريخية	popular	محبوب / شعبي / منتشر
detective stories	قصص بوليسية	review	مقال نقدي
mystery stories	قصص غامضة	solve	يحل
adventure story	قصص المغامرات	interested (adj)	مهتم بـ
detective (adj / n)	بوليسي / محقق	interest (n)	اهتمام (غير معدود)

Important Vocabulary

Lessons 1&2

a book with fewer pages	كتاب بصفحات اقل	students	تلاميذ
title	عنوان (كتاب/قصة/درس/ فيلم)	pages	صفحات
address	عنوان مكان	driest	الاكثر جفافا
schoolwork (U)	واجبات مدرسية	the Antarctic	القارة القطبية الجنوبية
enjoy + (v.ing / n)	يستمتع	useful	مفيد
adventure	مغامرة / مخاطرة	mysteries	الغاز / غموض
number of+اسم جمع	عدد من	writer	كاتب
amount of + اسم لا يعد	مقدار من / كمية من	bottle	زجاجة
pharaohs	فراعنة	the police	الشرطة (جمع)
ancient	قديم / عتيق	language	لغة
character	شخصية	problem	مشكلة
facts	حقائق	road	طريق
novel	رواية	school time	وقت الدراسة
too long	طويلة للغاية	litre	لتر
traveling	السفر	weigh	يزن
summary	ملخص / موجز	weak ≠ strong	ضعيف ≠ قوي
tour guide	مرشد سياحي	soil	تربة
lots of + جمع	كثير من	desert	صحراء
a lot of+ جمع/لا يعد	كثير من	afraid = frightened	خائف
few + جمع	قليل (لا يكفي الغرض)	Countable ≠ uncountable	يعد ≠ لا يعد
a few + جمع	قليل (يكفي)	Korean	كوري
a little + لا يعد	قليل (يكفي)	noisy	صاخب / مزعج
little + لا يعد	قليل (لا يكفي)	dangerous	خطير

Confusing Words

review	مقال نقدي	some time	بعض الوقت	title	عنوان	quiet	هاديء
view	منظر طبيعي	sometimes	أحياناً	headline	عنوان رئيسي	quite	إلى حد ما

Conjugations of irregular verbs:

think	يعتقد / يفكر	thought	thought	feel	يشعر	felt	felt
choose	يختار	chose	chosen	spend	يقضي	spent	spent
shake	يهتز	shook	shaken	read	يقرأ	read	read

Prepositions & Expressions

the fewest number of	جمع + اقل عدد من	on a boat trip	في رحلة بالقارب
have interest in+n/ving	لديه إهتمام بـ	on a bus	في الاتوبيس
do housework	يقوم بالعمل المنزلي	on the road	علي الطريق
solve problems	يحل مشكلة	important for	مهم لـ
solve crimes	يحل الجرائم	try to + مصدر	يحاول أن
spend time + v. ing	يقضي وقتاً في	help + مفعول	يساعد .. في عمله
a book with	كتاب به	wait for	ينتظر لـ
during holidays	أثناء الاجازات	a review of a book	مقال نقدي/مراجعة لكتاب
amount of time/ money / water	كمية من	what kind of + اسم ?	ما نوع

Definitions

Detective	محقق	someone who helps the police in their work
Title	عنوان	the name given to a book, play.
Review	مقال نقدي	writing which gives your opinion about a book or film

Language Notes

Historic (له أهمية في التاريخ حتى ولو كان حديث) تاريخي/هام

⇒ Opening the Suez Canal is a historic event.

historical (لسرد احداث واماكن / يحكي عن التاريخ) تاريخي

⇒ I like reading historical stories.

historian (شخص يدرس التاريخ) مؤرخ

⇒ My cousin is a historian, he studies history.

have interest in+ N / V ing **لديه اهتمام بـ**

⇒ I have interest in historical stories.

am/is/are + interested in+ N / V ing **مهتم بـ**

⇒ I'm interested in historical stories.

spend + وقت + v.ing **يقضي**

⇒ I spent 30 seconds waiting for the bus.

enjoy + v.ing / n **يستمتع بـ**

⇒ What kind of things do you enjoy reading?

try to + inf **يحاول ان**

⇒ I will try to solve this problem

try+ v ing **يجرب**

⇒ I tried solving this crime.

number of + جمع **عدد من**

⇒ This book has the fewest numbers of pages.

amount of + لا يعد **مقدار من / كمية من**

⇒ This book will take you the least amount of time to read.

Reading

Tarek: I have some time before my next lesson. Let's choose a book to read.

Omar: There are lots of historical stories here, but there are few detective stories.

Tarek: That is because detective stories are more popular, aren't they? People like trying to solve the problems before the detective. People have less interest in historical stories.

Omar: Detective stories are too long. I have little time to read this year because I have more schoolwork. So I want a book with fewer pages than a detective story.

Tarek: This book has the fewest number of pages and will take you the least amount of time to read.

Omar: Tarek, that book is about travelling, isn't it?

Tarek: True! This is good. Its title is Ten Facts about the World.

Omar: I read a review of that book. It said it was very good. I will read that!

Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

- 1- A helps the police in their work.
a. review **b. detective** **c. title** **d. doctor**
- 2- I read a of that book. It said it was very good.
a. revision **b. revenge** **c. review** **d. letter**
- 3- Robison Crusoe is a kind of stories.
a. adventure **b. detective** **c. historical** **d. mystery**
- 4- This is a.....story about the pharaohs in ancient Egypt.
a. history **b. historical** **c. historically** **d. historian**
- 5- Ilittle time to read this year because I have more schoolwork. SB
a. take **b. spend** **c. have** **d. make**
- 6- I want to see that film because the..... in the newspaper says that it is very exciting.
a. view **b. review** **c. viewer** **d. interview**
- 7- I tried hard to the problem.
a. answer **b. do** **c. accept** **d. solve**
- 8- Few People have in historical stories.
a. interest **b. interesting** **c. interested** **d. interestingly**
- 9- Mai spends her time for her exams.
a. to study **b. to studying** **c. studying** **d. study**
- 10- What are your, Hisham?
a. interested **b. interesting** **c. interests** **d. interest**
- 11- My mother always a lot of housework.
a. makes **b. buys** **c. lets** **d. does**
- 12- Students usually sleep little time school time.
a. while **b. as** **c. when** **d. during**
- 13- How often do you go a boat trip?
a. for **b. at** **c. in** **d. on**
- 14- This story is the first story in English language. It's a book.
a. history **b. historical** **c. historic** **d. historian**

Countable & Uncountable Nouns

الأسماء التي تعد (Countable Nouns)

هي الأسماء التي لها مفرد وجمع وتسبق بـ (a - an - the - one - ملكية)

a potato → potatoes **an** onion → onions **a** sweet → sweets **a** lemon → lemons

هناك أسماء شاذة:

man → men	woman → women	child → children	foot → feet
tooth → teeth	mouse → mice	ox → oxen	sheep → sheep

• هناك كلمات جمع دائما:

people	الناس	police	الشرطة
--------	-------	--------	--------

Uncountable Nouns الأسماء التي لا تعد

هي الأسماء التي ليس لها جمع فهي مفرد دائما ولها شكل واحد لا يتغير وتأخذ is / فعل مفرد

water ماء - oil زيت - tea شاي - juice عصير - milk لبن	أسماء السوائل
oxygen الأكسجين - air الهواء - wood خشب - glass زجاج - cotton قطن - plastic بلاستيك - metal معدن	أسماء الغازات والمواد الخام
football كرة القدم - basketball كرة السلة - tennis التنس	أسماء الألعاب
history التاريخ - English إنجليزي - math رياضيات - music موسيقى	أسماء المواد الدراسية واللغات
rice أرز - meat لحم - flour دقيق - sugar سكر - coffee قهوة	أسماء المأكولات والمشروبات
money أموال - freedom الحرية - homework واجب - work عمل - news اخبار - interest اهتمام - furniture اثاث - advice نصيحة - time وقت - equipment معدات - information معلومات	أسماء أخرى

Expressing of quantity

هناك كلمات تستخدم مع الأسماء التي تعد أو الأسماء التي لا تعد

a lot of كثير من (إثبات)

⇒ I have a lot of books.

⇒ I have a lot of housework to do.

some بعض (إثبات- عرض - طلب)

⇒ There is some cheese in the cupboard

⇒ I bought some wonderful books.

⇒ Would you like some tea?

⇒ Can I have some lamb?

any أي (نفي- سؤال)

⇒ There aren't any canals near that town.

⇒ Is there any honey?

⇒ Are there any eggs in the fridge?

Countable Nouns:

- a lot of كثير من
- lots of كثير من
- many كثير من
- too many أكثر من الازم
- a few قليل من
- few قليل من
- too few أقل من الازم
- How many كم عدد

Countable Nouns:

- a lot of كثير من
- lots of كثير من
- many كثير من
- too many أكثر من الازم
- a few قليل من
- few قليل من
- too few أقل من الازم
- How many كم عدد

a lot of كثير من (تأتي قبل اسم يعد أو اسم لا يعد في جملة خبرية مثبتة)

➤ I have got a lot of friends. ➤ I have a lot of Cds. ➤ I have got a lot of money.

ممكن استخدام كلمة (a lot) بدون (of) ولا يتبعها اسم.

➤ I like trying to solve crimes a lot. ➤ It rains a lot from June to October.

lots of كثير من (قبل اسم يعد جمع في جملة خبرية مثبتة)

➤ There are lots of historical stories here.

many كثير من (قبل اسم يعد جمع في النفي والسؤال)

- I haven't got many friends. ➤ Do you have many friends?

too many أكثر من اللازم (قبل اسم يعد في جملة خبرية مثبتة وتشير إلى عدد أكثر من اللازم)

- There are too many people in the hall. ➤ There are too many pens.

a few قليل من (قبل اسم يعد وتشير إلى عدد قليل ولكن يكفي في الجملة المثبتة)

- I have a few pounds. (enough)

few قليل من (قبل اسم جمع وتشير إلى عدد قليل ولا يكفي في الجملة المثبتة)

- There are few detective stories here.

too few أقل من اللازم (قبل اسم جمع في جملة خبرية مثبتة وتشير إلى عدد أقل من اللازم)

- The pupils answered too few questions.

How many كم عدد (للسؤال عن العدد ويأتي بعدها اسم جمع)

- How many detective stories did you read?

Uncountable Nouns:

- **a lot of** كثير من ● **much** كثير من ● **too much** أكثر من اللازم ● **a little** قليل من
● **little** قليل من ● **too little** أقل من اللازم ● **How much** كم الكمية

a lot of كثير من (تأتي قبل اسم يعد أو اسم لا يعد في جملة خبرية مثبتة)

- People use a lot of water. ➤ I spent a lot of money on buying chocolate.

much كثير من (تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد)

- I spend much time doing my homework. ➤ I don't have much money.

too much أكثر من اللازم (قبل اسم لا يعد في جملة خبرية مثبتة وتشير إلى كمية أكثر من اللازم)

- I have too much interest in football.

a little قليل من (قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة ولكن تكفي)

- I have a little water. (enough)

little قليل من (قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة ولا تكفي في الجملة المثبتة)

- I have little time to read. (not enough)

too little أقل من اللازم (تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد في جملة خبرية مثبتة وتشير إلى كمية أقل من اللازم)

- She has got too little money.

How much كم الكمية (للسؤال عن الكمية ويأتي بعدها اسم لا يعد)

- How much time do you spend doing homework every day?

Using comparatives and superlatives for comparison:**few / fewer / the fewest عدد قليل****few+ جمع قليل من**

- there are few detective stories here.
- Few students read magazines.
- few people think that English is not a useful language.
- There are very few people who live in the west of Egypt.
- Very few people have travelled to the deepest parts of the sea.
- Do few tourists visit your area, or do many tourists visit it?

fewer+ جمع أقل

- this book has fewer pages.
- Which has fewer legs, a horse or a spider?

fewer+ جمع اسم + than أقل من

- I've got fewer books than you.
- I want a book with pages than a detective story.
- There are fewer English cars than Korean cars in Egypt.

the fewest+ جمع الأقل

- Class 4 has the fewest students.
- The fewest number of tourists visits the museum early in the morning
- The number of tourists visits the museum early in the morning

little / less / the least كمية قليلة**little+ لا بعد قليل من**

- There is little water in the lake because it was very dry this year
- I have little time to read this year because I have more schoolwork
- The hotel was noisy, so they had little sleep last night.

less+ لا بعد أقل

- People have less interest in historical stories.
- On Mondays, do you spend less time at home or at school?

less+ اسم لا بعد + than أقل من

- you have got less meat than I have
- Students often have less sleep during school time than during the holidays.

the least+ اسم لا بعد الأقل

- This book will take you the least amount of time to read.
- That bottle has the least water.
- The Antarctic is the place in the world that has the least rain.
- 1.6 litres is the least amount of water that women should drink every day.
- Which weighs the least, air, water or soil?
- What is the least time you have spent doing your homework?

more + جمع / لا يعد + than أكثر من

the most + جمع / لا يعد الأكثر

- The old car uses more petrol than modern cars.
- A spider has more legs than a horse.
- Sara has more homework than Heba.
- Hend has the most housework.

ملاحظات:

little = not much للكمية / **few = not many** للعدد

- I have got a few friends. (many)
⇒ I don't have many friends.
- all the students have more books than hany. (the fewest)
⇒ Hany has the fewest books.
- Not many people like historical novels. (few)
⇒ Few people like historical novels.
- I would like to read this detective story, but I don't have much time. (little)
⇒ I would like to read this detective story, but I have little time

fewer/less = more مع عكس الطرفين

إستبدال كلمة بعكسها نعكس الطرفين

- Rodayna has more books in her bag than Malak. (fewer)
⇒ Malak has fewer books in her bag than Rodyna.
- Sally has got more books than salma. (fewer)
⇒ Salma has got fewer books than sally.
- The blue bottle has more water than the green bottle. (less)
⇒ The green bottle has less water than the blue bottle.

حالة إستبدال الكلمة بمقابلها في الجرامر نضع تجزئة

few	fewer	the fewest	many
↓	↓	↓	↓
little	less	the least	much

bottles لترات kilos كيلوات bags حقائب glasses اكواب pieces قطع litres لترات

- My car uses little petrol. (fewer)
⇒ My car uses few litres of petrol.

few	} جمع	little	} لا يعد	many/much	} جمع
fewer		less		more	
fewer than		less than		more than	
the fewest		the least		the most	

Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

- 1)students in our school have visited England.
a. Few **b. Little** **c. Less** **d. The least**
- 2) My notebook has pages than your notebook
a. less **b. few** **c. least** **d. fewer**
- 3) This book has pages than that book .
a. little **b. less** **c. fewer** **d. least**
- 4) Reham : . Mom! I have the rice in the family! Please, I want some more.
 Mother: Yours is enough, but help yourself if you'd like some more.
a. fewer **b. least** **c. fewest** **d. teas**
- 5) Students often have sleep during school time than during holidays.
a. few **b. fewer** **c. little** **d. less**
- 6) People often drink.....water in cold weather than when it is hot
a. less **b. more** **c. fewer** **d. least**
- 7) Please, I need a book with pages. I have no time.
a. more **b. little** **c. less** **d. fewer**
- 8) people in Egypt have visited London.
a. The least **b. Few** **c. Less** **d. Little**
- 9) people like reading.
a. Few **b. Little** **c. Least** **d. The least**
- 10) There are than 20 people on the bus today.
a. little **b. less** **c. fewer** **d. least**
- 11) What is the time you have spent playing computer games?
a. less **b. fewer** **c. least** **d. fewest**
- 12) This bottle has orange juice in it.
a. fewer **b. the fewest** **c. the least** **d. little**
- 13) People haveinterest in historical stories.
a. least **b. less** **c. few** **d. fewer**
- 14) there ismilk in the fridge. I can't make the cake.
a. few **b. little** **c. many** **d. fewer**
- 15) Howmen were presented at the meeting?
a. much **b. many** **c. lots of** **d. fewer**
- 16) There's.....water in this lake because it was very dry this year.
a. few **b. little** **c. many** **d. fewer**
- 17) The hotel was noisy, so they had sleep last night. WB
a. few **b. many** **c. little** **d. least**

18) The bottle has.....orange juice in it.

a. fewer

b. the fewest

c. least

d. the least

19) Fridays have thenumber of cars on roads.

a. fewer

b. fewest

c. less

d. least

20) People drink.....when it is hot.

a. many

b. few

c. a few

d. much

Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- The blue bottle has more water than the green bottle.

(less)

2- March has more days than February.

(fewer)

3- Not many people like historical novels.

(few)

4- I would like to read this detective story, but I don't have much time.

(little)

5- Rodayna has more books in her bag than Malak.

(fewer)

6- I don't have as much interest in adventure stories as I do in mysteries.

(less)

7- Travelling by ship is cheaper than travelling by plane.

(less)

8- Mona has more books than Soha.

(fewer)

9- No other girl in our class has fewer books than Elham

(the fewest)

10- Ali drank three glasses of water, but Rami drank only one.

(less)

11- Ahmed has five books. Yara has three books.

(fewer)

12- Manal always helps people.

(helpful)

13- March has more days than February .

(Fewer)

14- Rodayna has more books in her bag than Malak.

(fewer)

15- A month has more days than a week.

(A week)

Key Vocabulary

Lessons 3&4

adventure story	قصص المغامرات	last	يُدوم - يَستمر / الماضي
detective stories	قصص بوليسية	living things	الكائنات الحية
hostrical stories	قصص تاريخية	sailor	بحار
mysteries	قصص ألغاز	go down	تغرب للشمس / تنخفض للأسعار
character	شخصية	Tremble= shake	يرتعش
summry	ملخص	description	وصف

Extra Vocabulary

move	ينتقل	someone+مفرد	شخص ما
realise/realize	يدرك	finally	اخيرا
novel	رواية	another day	يوم اخر
writer	كاتب	remember	تذكر
Express feelings	يعبر عن المشاعر	text	نص
tell feelings	يخبر المشاعر	carefully	بحرص / بعناية
carer	المعتني ب / القائم على خدمة شخص	careful (adj)	حريص / مهتم
mystery	سر غامض - لغز	shy	خجول / مكسوف
scary	مخيف	write down	يسجل / يدون
weak	ضعيف	die	يموت
include	يتضمن / يشمل	somewhere	في مكان ما
safe	آمن	How far	كم للمسافة
confused	مرتبك	Black Beauty	الجمال الاسود (الحصان الاسود)
pass = succeed in	ينجح / يجتاز	the nearest	الاقرب
warm	دافئ	abroad	خارج البلاد / في الخارج
wonderful	رائع	light	نور / ضوء (غير معدود)
enjoyable	ممتع	a light	مصباح (معدود)
person	شخص	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
loaf leaves	ورق شجر	tired	مُتعب
blow	تهب (الرياح)	suddenly	فجأة
like (adj)	مثل	towards	تجاه
still	مازال	root	اصل الكلمة
road	طريق	care (v)	يهتم
experts	خبراء	quietly	بهدوء / بصمت

remember that	يتذكر ان	quiet	هادئ / صامت
realize that	يدرك ان	quit	يستقيل / يتوقف عن
sell	يبيع	quite	الى حد ما
island	جزيرة	valley	وادي
sink	يغرق (للاشياء)	grow up	يكبر

Confusing Words

die يموت	desert صحراء	loaves أرغفة	below أسفل	alone بمفرده
dye صبغة	dessert تحلية	leaves اوراق شجر	blow تهب	lonely شاعر بالوحدة

Conjugations of irregular verbs

blow تهب	blew	blown	find يجد	found	found
drive يقود	drove	driven	know يعرف	knew	known
write يكتب	wrote	written	shake يهتز	shook	shaken
begin يبدأ	began	begun	think يفكر	thought	thought
teach يعلم	taught	taught	hear يسمع	heard	heard
sell يبيع	sold	sold	give يعطي	gave	given

Prepositions & Expressions

the end of	نهاية الـ	a man with a light	رجل معه ضوء/مصباح
look after	يعتني بـ	return from	يعود من
make friends with	يكون صداقات مع	give opinion about	يعطي رأي عن
teach + مفعول + to + inf	يعلم..... ان	important for	مهم لـ
The story made me feel excited!	القصة جعلتني أشعر بالحماس	in nineteenth-century England	في القرن ١٩ في انجلترا
talk about	يتحدث عن	move abroad	ينتقل خارج البلاد
in five days	في خلال خمسة أيام	look after	يعتني بـ
You are asked	أنت سُألت	stay warm	يبقي دافئا

Definitions

Character شخصية	a person in a book, play, film, etc.
Summary ملخص	writing that gives the main information about something
Carer راعي	helps people who are old
Adventure مغامرة	something unusual, exciting and maybe dangerous
Tremble يهتز	shake a little when you are afraid, worried or excited
Novel رواية	a long story that is written
Weak ضعيف	not strong
Title عنوان	the name given to a book, play, etc

Language Notes

arrive يصل (بدون مكان)

I arrived early.

arrive in+ يصل مكان كبير (دولة - مدينة)

I arrived in Cairo.

arrive at + مكان يصل مكان صغير

She arrived at school late

reach + مكان يصل بدون حرف جر

He reached school.

get to + مكان يصل مكان

I got to Alex ;at week.

arrive/ reach / get / go home لا تأخذ كلمة home حرف جر

one of + فعل مفرد + اسم جمع احد - واحد من

⇒ One of the boys is ill

make+ مفعول + **feel +** صفة يجعله يشعر بـ

⇒ The film makes me feel frightened.

feel (felt-felt) يشعر

⇒ My parents fed happy because I passed the exam.

fall (fell-fallen) يقع

⇒ In autumn, the leaves start to fall.

fill (filled-filled) يملأ

⇒ He filled the glass with water.

fail (ed) يفشل

⇒ He failed the test because he didn't study hard.

Read the end of the story. What kind of story do you think it is?

The trees are the first living things that Hassan has seen in five days. The Wind is blowing and the leaves on the trees are trembling, like him. He is tired and weak.

A few hours before he arrived here, Hassan thought he was going to die. There was no food in the desert and he knew that the little water he had would not last another day. Now he knows that he will find water, because if there are trees, there must be water somewhere. But he still doesn't know where he is. How far is it to the nearest road, where he might find help?

The sun is going down quickly and he knows it will be cold for the next eight hours. How can he stay warm for another night in the desert?

Suddenly, he sees something. Someone is carrying a light towards him. He realises that it is a man. Finally, help has arrived. He is safe.

Tapescript



Nadia : Did you like the end of the story?

Salma : I am not sure I understand it. Who is the man with the light? And why does it say that the leaves are trembling? people usually tremble when they feel excited or frightened, not leaves.

Nadia : Hassan is trembling because he is tired and week. He has been in the desert for five days. I don't think the writer is saying that the leaves feel frightened when the wind comes, but they are moving in the same way as Hassan because he is so tired.

Salma : How did you feel when Hassan finally saw the trees?

Nadia : It made me feel excited! You know that he will find some water because there are trees there, and they need water. We know that he won't die.

Salma : I think it is clever because we think that he will be alone in the desert for another night, but then he sees the light.

Nadia : Why do you think there is a man with a light?

Salma : I think that it is his friend Ahmed . Ahmed knew that Hassan was going in the desert and we know that Ahmed knows the desert very well. So Hassan is safe now.

Nadia : Yes, I think you are right.

Salma : How do you feel about the story now?

Nadia : I feel quite happy! I like adventure stories like this.

Black Beauty" by Anna Sewell

"Black Beauty" is a story about a black horse in nineteenth-century England. The horse tells the story of his life which began at a farm. Black Beauty's mother teaches him to be a good horse. Farmer Grey is very kind and Black Beauty is happy. When Black Beauty is four, Farmer Grey sells him to Squire Gordon. Black Beauty makes friends with other horses and the quire looks after them very well.

Unfortunately, the squire moves abroad and Black Beauty is sold to different people. Some people are very unkind. One of his them is very bad. Black Beauty has many adventures before he finally finds a good home again.

Daniel Defoe

You have heard of the writer, Daniel Defoe, haven't you? One of my favourite novels by Daniel Defoe is a book called Robinson Crusoe. It is about a boy who wants to become a sailor. When he grows up, he travels to many countries and has many adventures. His boat sinks and he lives for many years on an island. I liked the description of how he finds food and a place to live. Finally, Crusoe meets some other people and returns to England. Some of the story made me feel sad, but at the end I felt happy. It was a very enjoyable story and the characters are wonderful classwork

choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d

- 1-stories show us how to solve problems.
a. Adventure b. Historical c. Travel d. Detective
- 2- A/An.....is Something unusual, exciting and maybe dangerous.
a. Adventure b. Historical c. mystery d. Detective
- 3- The story Amal read made hersad.
a. think b. do c. feel d. fall
- 4- He is trembling; he is very hard.
a. shaking b. standing c. feeling d. falling
- 5- The teacher asked us to write a of our visit to the museum.
a. character b. title c. conclusion d. description
- 6- Mazin's mother is a/an....She helps people who are very old.
a. carer b. teacher c. expert d. writer
- 7- A.....is a person in a book, play, film, etc.
a. channel b. character c. programme d. teacher
- 8- A/An.....is text that gives the most important information about something.
a. summary b. adventure c. title d. character

9- What is the of the book you are reading?

- a. toilet** **b. address** **c. title** **d. dress**

10- If a person feels, he is not strong.

- a. week** **b. weak** **c. sad** **d. happy**

11- "Robinson Crusoe" is a kind of stories.

- a. Adventure** **b. Historical** **c. mystery** **d. Detective**

12- Naguib Mahfouz was an Egyptian.....

- a. writer** **b. engineer** **c. doctor** **d. athlete**

التعبير عن المشاعر Expressing feelings

I feel/ felt	أنا أشعر بـ / شعرت	⇒ I feel happy. / I feel worried.
I don't feel	أنا لا أشعر	⇒ I don't feel happy.
It makes/made me feel ...	جعلتني أشعر بـ	⇒ It made me feel excited.

Adjectives to express feelings:

happy سعيد	sad حزين	frightened خائف	afraid خائف	Nervous متوتر
confused مرتبك	worried قلق	excited مثار	Scared مرعوب	Shy خجول

- Your friend asks you how you feel when you do an exam.
⇒ I feel worried. / I don't feel happy.
- A friend asks you what you thought of a scary film that has just finished.
⇒ I think it's frightening. / I feel frightened. / It made me feel frightened.
- You express your feelings when your favourite team wins a match.
⇒ I feel happy./it makes me feel excited.

السؤال عن المشاعر Asking about feelings

- How do/did you feel when? كيف تشعر عندما
- How do you feel about now? كيف تشعر تجاه؟
- Did the make you feel happy/sad/ frightened? ... هل جعلتك تشعر بـ ...
- You ask your friend about his feeling when he saw a scary film.
⇒ How did you feel when you saw a scary film?
- Your friend has finished a book. The end of the book made you feel sad.
You want to know if your friend thinks the same.
⇒ Did the end of the book make you sad/ feel sad?

Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1- How did you feel when you read the story?

2- What is your opinion of the film?

3- You see a snake which is going to bite you.

4- Your friend has just scored a goal for your team.

5- Your sister is late and she hasn't arrived home.

6- You are going to do a difficult exam.

7- You ask your friend about his feelings when he saw the lion.

8- Your brother wants to know how the film made you feel.

9- You ask your friend about his feeling when he saw a scary film.

10- A friend asks you about the kind of novels you like to read.

11- You express your feelings when your favourite team wins a match.

12- You are asked about your feeling when you saw a snake.

13- You watch a scary film. Express your feeling.

14- Your friend asks you how you feel when you do an exam.

15- You watched a film which made you sad. you want to know if your friend thinks the same.

16- You saw fireworks and the sky was filled with colours. Express your feelings.

17- You want to go on a picnic. make suggestion.

18- You ask your friend about the best way to revise before the exam.

19- You are asked about your health?

Finish the following dialogue

Seif has just watched a film at Yassin's house.

Self : That was a very good film.

Yassin : Yes, it was. (1)

Self : I was frightened when Detective Zaki was in the desert. Why did he go there?

Yassin : (2)

Self : Now I understand. Do you recommend watching his other detective films?

Yassin : (3)

Self : OK, I'll take your advice. (4)

Yassin : you can find many of his films on the internet

Finish the following dialogue

Basma and Shady are talking about a film review.

Basma: You look busy, Shady!

Shady : Yes, I am reading a film review.

Basma: (1)

Shady : The film is called "Modern Egypt".

Basma: (2)

Shady : The review says our plans today will make Egypt a better place to live in.

Basma: What will the internet be like in Modern Egypt?

Shady : (3)

Basma: That sounds great! Let's watch this film together.

Shady : (4)

Finish the following dialogue:

Soha is talking about a story she read.

Hala : Does this novel (1)..... frightened?

Soha : No, it makes me feel sad.

Hala : (2).....?

Soha : The end of this story makes me feel happy.

Hala : How do you feel when you do an exam?

Soha : (3).....

Hala : How do you feel about speaking English now?

Soha : (4)..... I enjoy it!

Unit 3 Festivals and special Days

Key Vocabulary

Lessons 1&2

festival	مهرجان	sign	إشارة/علامة
celebration	إحتفال	appear	يظهر
celebrate	يحتفل	go into = enter	يدخل
special	خاص	Sham el- Nessim	شم النسيم
represent	يمثل / ينوب عن	Mother's Day	عيد الأم
free	حر - غير مشغول	Eid al-Fitr	عيد الفطر
Hold ⇒ held	يعقد (ينظم حدث او احتفال)	have a festival	يقوم باحتفال (مهرجان)

Extra Vocabulary

activity	نشاط	spring	الربيع
have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة	summer	الصيف
papyrus	ورق البردي	winter	الشتاء
spring festivals	أعياد الربيع	autumn = fall	الخريف
Australia	أستراليا	month-long	ممتد لمدة شهر
Canberra	عاصمة أستراليا	main park	المنتزه الرئيسي
Bosnia	البوسنة	toy	لعبة
zenica	زينيكا (مدينة في البوسنة)	can	علبة صفيح
sweets	حلوي	coat	معطف
freezer	مبرد	without	بدون
wear	يرتدي	all over the world	جميع أنحاء العالم
colourful	ملون - مبهج	music	موسيقى
the new life	الحياة الجديدة	flowers	زهور
end (N) (V)	ينهي/نهاية	pan	وعاء/حلة
fantastic	رائع	nearly	تقريبا

Conjugations of irregular verbs:

buy	يشترى	bought	bought	grow	ينمو / يكبر	grew	grown
take	ياخذ / يلتقط	took	taken	hold	يقيم/يعقد	held	held
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn	do	يفعل	did	done
pay	يدفع (اموال)	paid	paid	freeze	يتجمد	froze	frozen
catch	يمسك/يصطاد	caught	caught	give	يعطي	gave	gaven

Confusing Words

represent	يدل علي	on the way	علي الطريق	pan	وعاء	across	عبر
present	يقدم/هدية	in a way	بطريقة	ban	يمنع/يحرم	cross	يعبر

Prepositions & Expressions

in different ways	ب طرق (باساليب) مختلفة	a month-long festival	مهرجان مدته شهر
was first held	أقيم لأول مرة	celebrate a Mother's Day	يحتفل بعيد الأم
a day with lots of activities	يوم حافل بالأنشطة	on an important day	في يوم هام
for free	بالمجان	hundreds of	مئات من
a sign for	علامة ل	cook....for breakfast	يطهو..... للافطار
have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة	have to + inf	يجب أن
go on a picnic	يقوم بنزهة	appear on	يظهر علي
have a festival of	يقوم مهرجان	at the flower festival	في مهرجان الزهور
across the country	بجميع أنحاء الدولة	start of	بداية ل

Definitions

Free	مجاني	without having to pay any money.
Special	مميز/خاص	better or more important than usual.
Festival	مهرجان	an important day with lots of activities.
Represent	يدل علي	be a sign for something
Celebrate	يحتفل	enjoy activities on an important day

Language Notes

festival (في ذكرى حدث هام وله طقوس خاصة)

⇒ People have a festival of eggs in spring

celebration (احتفال/ما يتم من مظاهر فرحة وسرور)

⇒ He held a celebration for his success.

feast (عيد/مناسبة دينية)

⇒ Al adha is a Muslim feast

day (يوم/عيد لمناسبات مختلفة)

⇒ We celebrate mother's day on 21st march

hundred- thousand- million لا تجمع هذه الأرقام إذا جاء قبلها عدد

you can see two million flowers in the park.

My blouse is three hundred pounds

hundreds/thousands/millions of + جمع هذه الأرقام إذا جاءت بدون عدد نضيف لها s

in the festival, hundreds of eggs are cooked in a big pan

Special خاص أو مميز

⇒ Spring is a very special time of the year.

Private ملك شخص

⇒ This is our car, it is private.

public عام (ملك الجميع)

⇒ All people can use public transport.

on + تاريخ / يوم في يوم.....

on Sunday on Mondays on Christmas Day on 25 Dec.2010

in + قرن / سنه / شهر / فصول

in May in summer in 1990 in the fifteenth century

at + الاوقات الدقيقة / ساعات

at 3 o'clock at 10.30am at noon at bedtime at sunrise

Reading

Spring Festivals

Spring is celebrated in different ways all over the world. It is a very special time of the year. In Egypt, Sham el-Nessim was first held to celebrate the start of spring nearly 4,000 years ago.

In Japan, people celebrate when small flowers first appear on thousands of trees across the country. People go outside and have picnics under the trees with their friends and family.

In the town of Zenica in Bosnia, people have a festival of eggs in spring.

Hundreds of eggs are cooked in a big pan for breakfast and these are given to all the people of the town for free.

In Australia, the start of spring is celebrated in September! In the city of Canberra, there is a month-long flower festival to celebrate spring. You can see about a million beautiful flowers in the city's main park, and you can also listen to music.

Why do so many countries celebrate spring? The flowers and eggs all represent the new life that we can start to enjoy after the winter months have ended.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- My favourite.....is Eid al fitr.
 a. festival b. celebrate c. decoration d. custom
- 2- When do people new year in your Country?
 a. decorate b. represent c. celebrate d. play
- 3- The teacher asks the children what "%"
 a. presents b. represents c. celebrates d. paints
- 4- You do not have to pay to go into the museum. It is.....
 a. old b. special c. paid d. free
- 5- Spring begins when flowers on trees.
 a. appear b. disappear c. preserve d. decorate
- 6- A/An.....is an important day with lots of activities.
 a. storm b. earthquake c. festival d. muscle
- 7- The flowers and eggs.....all the new life that we can start to enjoy after the winter months have ended.
 a. represnt b. present c. preserve d. save
- 8- WeMother's day on 21st march every year.
 a. decorate b. hesitate c. Celebrate d. mark
- 9- 4. Sham el-Nessim is a for the start of spring.
 a. note b. sign c. signal d. song
- 10- 10. In a festival, eggs are given to all people free.
 a. at b. for c. on d. by
- 11- 15. Football World Cup is every four years.
 a. held b. stood c. caught d. made

المجهول في المضارع البسيط Present Simple Passive

نستخدم المجهول عندما يكون الحدث (الفعل) أهم من الفاعل أو أن نكون لا نعرف من قام بالفعل (الفاعل)

لتحويل من العلوم للمجهول في زمن المضارع البسيط نتبع الأتي:

١- نحدد الفاعل والفعل والمفعول

٢- نحدد الزمن (مضارع بسيط – ماضي بسيط)

٣- نضع المفعول في بداية الجملة (يصبح فاعل)

٤- نضع am/is/are قبل الفعل الذي نقوم بتحويله إلى التصريف الثالث

٥- نضع الفاعل في آخر الجملة مسبقاً بكلمة by يمكن الإستغناء عن هذه الخطوة.

فاعل + am/is/are (not) + P.P. + مفعول

- in Bosnia, the people cook eggs in a big pan (مبني للمعلوم)
 ⇒ in Bosnia, eggs are cooked in a big pan. (مبني لمجهول)

- People celebrate spring in different countries all over the world.
⇒ spring is celebrated in different ways all over the world.
- Farmers grow oranges in hot countries.
⇒ oranges are grown in hot countries.

في حالة النفي نحذف ونضع am not - isn't - aren't و don't/doesn't

- I don't send the email. (The email)
⇒ The email isn't sent (by me)
- They don't play the match.
⇒ The match isn't played
- My mother doesn't wash the dishes.
⇒ the dishes aren't washed by my mother.

سؤال بمعنى هل:

Am/Is /Are + مفعول + p.p ?
Yes, ضمير am/is/are.
No, ضمير am not/ isn't/aren't .

- Are oranges grown in hot countries?
⇒ Yes, they are.
- Is the garden cleaned by you?
⇒ Yes, it is. No, it isn't.

طريقة تحويل السؤال:

نحذف Do/Does نضع مكانهم Am/ IS / Are
ثم نغير مكان الفاعل والمفعول
نحول المصدر للتصريف الثالث

- Do people eat special food at this festival?
⇒ Is special food eaten at this festival (by people)
- Does your mother wash the dishes?
⇒ Are the dishes washed by your mother?

سؤال بأداة إستفهام:

WH + am/is /are + مفعول + p.p ?
مفعول + am/is/are (not)+ P.P.

- Where is Sham el-Nessim celebrated today?
⇒ It is celebrated all over the country.
- What is often given to children at New Year today?
⇒ Sweets are given to children.

طريقة تحويل السؤال:

نحذف do/does نضع مكانهم Am/ IS / Are
ثم نغير مكان الفاعل والمفعول
نحول المصدر للتصريف الثالث

- How do people celebrate Sham el-Nessim? **(celebrated)**
⇒ How is Sham el-Nessim celebrated today?
- Why do people keep fish in special freezers? **(by)**
⇒ Why is fish sometimes kept in special freezers by people?

المجهول في الماضي البسيط Past Simple Passive

نستخدم المجهول عندما يكون الحدث (الفعل) أهم من الفاعل أو أن نكون لا نعرف من قام بالفعل (الفاعل)

لتحويل من العلوم للمجهول في زمن المضارع البسيط نتبع الأتي:

- 1- نحدد الفاعل والفعل والمفعول
- 2- نحدد الزمن (مضارع بسيط - ماضي بسيط)
- 3- نضع المفعول في بداية الجملة (يصبح فاعل)
- 4- نضع was /were قبل الفعل الذي نقوم بتحويله إلي التصريف الثالث
- 5- نضع الفاعل في آخر الجملة مسبقاً بكلمة by يمكن الإستغناء عن هذه الخطوة.

فاعل + was/were (not) + P.P. + مفعول

⇒ Sham el-Nessim was first held to celebrate the start of spring nearly 4,000 years ago

⇒ The first pizza was invented by an Italian.

- My parents gave me new clothes for Eid al Fitr. **(I) (New clothes)**
⇒ I was gives new clothes for Eid al-Fitre (by my parents).
⇒ New clothes were given to me for Eid al-Fitre (by my parents)
- My sister cleaned the kitchen yesterday. **(The kitchen)**
⇒ The kitchen was cleaned by my sister yesterday.

في حالة النفي نحذف didn't ونضع weren't - wasn't

- I didn't send the email. **(The email)**
⇒ The email wasn't sent (by me)
- They didn't play the match.
⇒ The match wasn't played
- My mother didn't wash the dishes.
⇒ the dishes weren't washed by my mother.

Was/Were + مفعول + p.p ?
 Yes, ضمير was/were.
 No, ضمير wasn't/weren't.

- Were oranges grown in the past?

⇒ Yes, they were.

- was the garden cleaned by you?

⇒ Yes, it was. No, it wasn't.

طريقة تحويل السؤال:

نحذف Did نضع مكانهم Was/Were
 ثم نغير مكان الفاعل والمفعول
 نحول المصدر للتصريف الثالث

- Did an Italian man invent the first pizza?

⇒ Was the first pizza invented by an Italian?

- Did they make this car in Egypt? (Was)

⇒ Was this car made in Egypt by them?

طريقة تحويل السؤال:

نحذف did نضع مكانهم was/were
 ثم نغير مكان الفاعل والمفعول
 نحول المصدر للتصريف الثالث

- How did people cook fish in the past? (cooked)

⇒ How was fish cooked in the past?

ملحوظة:

١- إذا جاء بعد Who الفعل نضع by في آخر الجملة

- Who invented the first pizza? (by)

⇒ Who was the first pizza invented by?

٢- الأفعال الناقصة في المجهول نضع بعدها be

(تصرف ثالث+ be - should - could - can - would - will)

- Salam could pass the exam yesterday.

⇒ The exam could be passed by Salam yesterday.

في حالة التحويل من مجهول لمعلوم نتبع عكس الخطوات السابقة:

نغير أماكن الفاعل والمفعول

نحذف (am - is - are - was - were) ونحول الفعل للمصدر / مصدر

نحذف isn't - aren't ونضع مكانهم don't / doesn't

نحذف wasn't / weren't ونضع مكانهم didn't

- Many photos of the pyramids are taken by tourists. (Tourists)
⇒ Tourists take many photos of the Pyramids.
- The email wasn't sent by me. (didn't)
⇒ I didn't send the email.

نحول ضمائر الفاعل والمفعول

I	He	She	It	You	They	We
me	him	her	it	you	them	us

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 12- His passport when he was running to catch the train.
a. lost b. was lost c. was losing d. lose
- 13- The museumby thousands of tourist every day.
a. visited b. is visiting c. is visited d. was visited
- 14- Coats in winter by people.
a. wears b. are worn c. wore d. worn
- 15- What are the special foods at the festival?
a. eating b. ate c. eat d. eaten
- 16- Many photos of the pyramids every day.
a. take b. took c. are taking d. are taken
- 17- Are special foods at the festival?
a. ate b. eat c. eating d. eaten
- 18-this email sent by Mona?-Yes, Mona always does.
a. Were b. Are c. Does d. Is
- 19- This hat in England.
a. made b. make c. was made d. making
- 20- Where is Sham el- Nessim today?
a. celebrating b. celebrated c. celebrate d. celebrates
- 21- Aswan by thousands of tourists every year.
a. visited b. is visiting c. was visited d. is visited
- 22- The first Olympic gamesin Greece in 776 BC.
a. were holding b. are holding c. were held d. are held
- 23- The zoo by hundreds of people every day.
a. visited b. is visiting c. is visited d. was visited
- 24- Ito my friend's party and it was a good chance to meet my old friends.
a. am invented b. was invented c. am inventing d. invented
- 25- Spring in different ways all over the world.
a. is celebrated b. celebrates c. celebrating d. celebrate
- 26- When is Eid al Fitr?
a. celebrate b. celebrates c. celebrating d. celebrated
- 27- Egyptian bazaars to be the best in Africa.
a. thought b. think c. is thought d. are thought

- 28- Sham el.Nessim was first to celebrate the start of spring.
a. held **b. hold** **c. holding** **d. holds**
- 29- Howfish preserved in the past?
a. is **b. was** **c. are** **d. did**
- 30- Jam is in that cupboard.
a. keep **b. kept** **c. keeping** **d. keeps**
- 31- In the past, fishevery day.
a. was catching **b. is caught** **c. was caught** **d. caught**
- 32- lots of fish that we buy nowadays.....
a. froze **b. is frozen** **c. are frozen** **d. frozen**
- 33- The bridge.....fifty years ago.
a. was built **b. is built** **c. was building** **d. is building**
- 34- In Australia, the start of spring in September every year.
a. is celebrating **b. is being celebrated** **c. was celebrated** **d. is celebrated**

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets :

1. People give sweets to children at new year . **(given)**

2. The carpenter makes tables from wood. **(Tables)**

3. People in Egypt eat special food at Sham el-Nessim. **(is)**

4. Do people eat special food at this festival? **(Is ?)**

5. How do people celebrate New Year in China? **(celebrated)**

6. Tourists usually visit the pyramids. **(The pyramids)**

7. Did they make this car in Egypt? **(Was)**

8. In the past, fishermen caught fish every day . **(was)**

9. The Egyptians celebrate Sham el- Nessim in April. **(is)**

10. They didn't tell us the bad news. **(weren't)**

11. Who invented fireworks? **(were)= (by)**

12. Thousands of people watch the parade every year **(The parade)**

13. You do not have to pay to go into the museum. (free)
14. How do people celebrate New Year in China? (celebrated)= (is)
15. The children made their wonderful costumes. (were)= (Wonderful costumes)
16. Why do people preserve fish? (is) = (preserved)
17. This email wasn't sent by me. (I)
18. The car was stolen. (stole) = (Someone)
19. My parents gave me new clothes for Eid al-Fitr. (New clothes) (I)

Finish the following dialogue:

Samar asks her sister Aya about Eid al-Fitr Day.

Samar : Hello! Aya.

Aya : Hello! Samar.

Samar : (1)

Aya : By the end of Ramadan.

Samar : What habits do people do on this day ?

Aya : (2)

Samar : Do they eat any special food ?

Aya : (3)

Samar : (4)

Aya : I can see fireworks on that day in the sky.

Key Vocabulary

Lessons 3&4

last	يستمر	traditional food	طعام تقليدي
breeze	نسيم	feseekh	الفسيح
smell the breeze	يشم النسيم	decorate	يزين
boiled eggs	البيض المسلوق	congratulate	يهنيء
preserve	يحفظ / يحمي	dried	مجفف
dried fish	سمك مجفف	fireworks	العاب نارية

Extra Vocabulary

New Year's Day	عيد رأس السنة الجديدة	Chinese	صيني
relatives	أقارب	serve	يقدم (شينا)
natural	طبيعي	contain	يحتوي على
midday = 12 pm	الظهيرة (لاتجمع)	Eid al-Fitr	عيد الفطر
midnight = 12 am	منتصف الليل	the end of Ramadan	نهاية رمضان
smell	يشم	seasons	فصول السنة
colourful	كثير الالوان / غني بالالوان	bright	لامع/ساطع
parade	موكب/عرض	neighbour	جار
red paper lanterns	فوانيس ورقية حمراء	crafts	حرف/صناعات يدوية
spring air	هواء الربيع	electricity	كهرباء
fresh air	هواء منعش	times	عصور
bright colours	ألوان زاهية	join	ينضم إلى
paint	يدهن-يلون	art competition	مسابقة فنية
envelope	ظرف الخطاب	traditions	تقاليد
prepare	يحضر	traditional	تقليدي
Thanks giving Day	عيد الشكر	traditionally	تقليديا

Confusing Words

breeze	نسيم	paint	يلون	lantern	فانوس	costumes	ازياء خاصة بمناسبة
freeze	يجمد	draw	يرسم	lamp	مصباح	clothes	الملابس التي نرتديها
along	بطول / بمحاذاة	BCE	قبل الميلاد	smell	يشم	preserve	يحفظ (بمادة حافظة)
a long	شئ طويل	AD	بعد الميلاد	sniff	يشم بصوت عال	keep	يحفظ (بعيد عن الأيدي)

Conjugations of irregular verbs:

think	يعتقد / يفكر	thought	thought	sweep	يكنس	swept	swept
mean	يعني	meant	meant	smell	يشم	smelled	smelled

feel	يشعر	felt	felt		smelt	smelt	
blow	تهب للرياح	blew	blown	leave	يترك / يغادر	left	left
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn	stand	يقف	stood	stood

Prepositions & Expressions

at Shal el-Nessim	في شم النسيم	envelope with money	ظرف به نقود
decorate homes with	يزين المنازل بـ	dry with salt	يجفف بالملح
go on a picnic=have a picnic	يتنزه	on the first day of	في اليوم الأول لـ
go on a parade	يذهب في موكب	it's important to + inf	مهم أن
last for+مدة	يستمر لمدة/يدوم لمدة	important for	مهم لـ
for a long /short time	لفترة طويلة/قصيرة	wear + شيء + for + شيء	يرتدي
say congratulations to	يقدم التهنئة لـ	good for you!	مفيد لك/مناسب لك
congratulate + شخص on	يهنيئ .. شخص بـ	come from far away	يأتي من بعيد
decorate.....with	يزين بـ	date back to ...	يعود تاريخه الى
decorated in	مزين بـ	filled with	مملوء بـ.....
at midnight	في منتصف الليل	put salt on	يضع ملح علي
at midday	في منتصف النهار	in bright colours	بالوان زاهية
dress up in	يرتدي (زي تنكري)	paint eggs	يلون البيض

Definitions

Lanterns	فوانيس	We use them to see at night
Breeze	نسيم	a weak wind
Traditional	تقليدي	something has been done for a long period of time
Midnight	منتصف الليل	the minute after 11.59 pm
Customes	أزياء	clothes that we wear for special days

Language Notes

at night ليلا

- Stars appear in the sky at night.

On the night في ليلة محددة

- There is a special meal on the night before New Year's Day

traditions تقاليد عامة

- It is people's tradition to eat FESEEKH on this day.

habits عادات شخصية

- his habit is to get up early.

congratulate+ شخص+ on يهنئ شخص على

- I congratulated sama on getting the full mark.

say congratulations to+ شخص ل يقول مبروك ل

- We said congratulations to Sama

Tapescript



My name is Li. I am from China. My favourite festival is New Year. It lasts for about eight days. It is the most important festival for Chinese people and we start preparing for it a week before it starts. First of all, we clean our houses. We sweep and wash all the floors, doors and windows.

Next, we decorate our homes with red paper lanterns. Afterwards, many people go shopping for new clothes.

There is always a special meal on the night before New Year's Day. Relatives come from far away to join their families. Lots of special New Year food is eaten, but the most important food is usually fish. Dinner is usually eaten at home, not often in a restaurant. After dinner, children are given red envelopes with some money inside by their parents. At midnight, there are fireworks and the sky is filled with colour and noise.

The next morning, on the first day of the New Year, we wear our new clothes and say congratulations to our friends and neighbours. Traditionally, young people visit older people to say Happy New Year to them. At midday, there are parades where people dress up in colourful costumes. Some people wear huge lion costumes, too.

Reading

Sham el-Nessim

Sham el-Nessim means smelling the breeze and it is celebrated all over Egypt on a Monday in April or May. The festival started in about 2700 BCE. The ancient Egyptian year had three seasons and Sham el-Nessim was held to celebrate the start of spring. Sham el-Nessim isn't celebrated in any other country.

Today, Sham el-Nessim is a holiday and families go out to enjoy the fresh spring air. The spring air is very good for you! People often have a picnic in the country, in parks or along the Nile.

Special food is eaten at Sham el-Nessim. Traditionally, boiled eggs are eaten for breakfast. Eggs are decorated in bright colours by children. They usually paint the eggs in the morning and leave them in the sun to dry.

Another traditional food which is eaten on this day is feseekh: Fish that is dried with salt. This tradition also dates back to ancient Egyptian times. When people had more fresh fish than they could eat, they put salt on it to preserve it.

It is important to buy feseekh from a clean shop so that you are sure that the fish will be good for you.

Mr Sergany's two-day festival.

First of all, the two-day festival is opened by Mr Sergany at 9 a.m. Afterwards there is an art competition. At midday, lunch is served. After Lunch, there is a children's sports competition. The next morning, you can look at and buy crafts. Before Mr Sergany closes the festival at 1 p.m., you can listen to some traditional music.

Thanksgiving Day

First of all, a large bird and special food are bought at the shops and cooked. Next we play or watch a game of American football. After wards, many people go on a parade, with balloons and music. At dinner, we eat the bird and say thank you for all the good things in our life. The next day, we give money or food to poor people.

It is important to buy feseekh from a clean shop so that you are sure that the fish will be good for you.

Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d

- 1- Salt is often used to fish.
a. pack **b. preserve** **c. decorate** **d. celebrate**
- 2- I would like to eat eggs for breakfast.
a. boil **b. boiling** **c. boiled** **d. boils**
- 3- The first Olympic Games In Greece in 776 BC.
a. hold **b. held** **c. are hold** **d. were hold**
- 4- In Egypt, people use salt on fish to preserve it.
a. bad **b. fresh** **c. dirty** **d. boiled**
- 5- You do not have to pay to go into the museum. It is.....
a. old **b. special** **c. paid** **d. free**
- 6- Sham el Nessim is a.....day for all of us.
a. usual **b. special** **c. private** **d. free**
- 7- Children like to wear colorful..... at some festivals.
a. breeze **b. parade** **c. tradition** **d. costumes**
- 8- On the beach, you can feel a.....blowing from the sea.
a. fish **b. ship** **c. wave** **d. breeze**
- 9- In the past, our grandparents used to wear.....clothes.
a. fashionable **b. traditional** **c. modern** **d. recent**
- 10-It is not too hot on the beach because there is a nice
a. cloud **b. storm** **c. wave** **d. breeze**
- 11-Many people like to freeze food to it.
a. preserve **b. celebrate** **c. decorate** **d. paint**
- 12-At there were fireworks to welcome the new year
a. midday **b. midnight** **c. Mid.year** **d. morning**
- 13- There was no electricity on the farm, so the farmer used so that he could read.
a. fireworks **b. lights** **c. lanterns** **d. lamps**
- 14-We walked up the street in a to celebrate the start of spring.
a. queue **b. line** **c. group** **d. parade**
- 15- When we eggs for Sham el-Nessim, we try to use natural colours from plants.
a. preserve **b. celebrate** **c. decorate** **d. Freeze**
- 16-The children wore historicalfor the school play.
a. uniforms **b. clothes** **c. costumes** **d. suits**
- 17-at 12 o'clock, there are colorful.....it's very noisy.
a. fireworks **b. envelopes** **c. relatives** **d. costumes**
- 18-We decorate our homes with red paper
a. clothes **b. bags** **c. lanterns** **d. walls**
- 19-I would like to eat eggs for breakfast.
a. boil **b. boiling** **c. boiled** **d. boils**

Using Sequencing Words

First of all,	أولا قبل كل شيء
Next,.....	ثم
Afterwards,.....	بعد ذلك
After بعد / Before قبل / At في , اسم / After بعد / Before قبل , + v ing	قبل / بعد
At midnight,.... At midday,	في منتصف الليل في منتصف النهار
The next day / morning / afternoon,.....	اليوم/الصباح / بعد الظهرية التالي

First of all, we clean our houses.

Next, we decorate our homes

Afterwards, many people go shopping

After / Before / At dinner, children are given envelopes.

Before eating, I wash my hands.

At midnight, there are fireworks.

At midday, there are parades where people dress up in colourful costumes.

The next day / morning / afternoon, we wear our new clothes

Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1- You tell your friend how you celebrate Sham el-Nassim.

⇒ First of all, I decorate my home. Next, I paint eggs.

⇒ I have a picnic in the country. / First, I paint eggs . Then, I boil them.

2- Someone asks you what you do first when you get up.

⇒ First, I wash and get dressed./ First, I brush my teeth. Next, I take a shower.

3- A friend wants to know what to do after you paint the eggs.

⇒ After painting the eggs, I leave them in the sun to dry.

4- You tell a friend what you did last Saturday at midday.

⇒ Last Saturday at midday, I did my homework./I visited my relatives.

5- A friend asks you what you do before and after dinner.

⇒

6- you tell you friend how you celebrate sham el nassim

⇒

7- A friend asks you what you do in the new year.

⇒

8- You're asked how you celebrate the New year.

⇒

Revision A

Tapescript



Taha : I've finished my book now so I'd like a new one. Is there a good place to buy books near here?

Amir : The best place is on this road. The New Bookshop is opposite the bank. I suggest that you go there. I'll come with you.

Taha : It's a big shop. Where do you suggest we start looking?

Amir : First of all, we can look at the adventure stories on the ground floor.

Taha : OK. Afterwards we can look on the first floor. There are sports books on the first floor, I like those.

Amir : Look. This is by your favourite writer. It's a new book. Have you read it?

Taha : No, I haven't. Did you read the last book she wrote?

Amir : Yes, It was very exciting. Did the end of the story make you feel happy?

Taha : It made me feel very happy. That's why I want to buy her new book.

Amir : OK, here it is.

Taha : Thanks. You should read it when I've finished it.

Amir : Great, thanks Taha!

Reading

Welcome to Aswan!

Visitors to Egypt should visit Aswan, in the south of Egypt. All the guidebooks say that it is a wonderful place to spend a holiday. You can visit the Nubian Museum there. Many important and historical things were moved to the museum in the 1960's. You should visit Aswan's bazaar, too. Many things are sold here, for example clothes, nuts and fruit, flowers and baskets. Everyone should also take a trip on one of feluccas to see the beautiful Nile River. Many tourists visit the amazing nearby temples of Philae and Kalabsha. You should take a good camera. Many photographs are taken at Elephantine Island. It has this name because the rocks next to the island look like elephants that are swimming in the Nile. There is a tourist information center near the railway station. The people there can help you to find a hotel. The best time to come is in the winter, when the temperature is about 25°C, or less if there is a cool breeze. There is little rain in Aswan. Fewer tourists visit in the summer because it is very hot.

Practice Test 1A**Finish the following dialogue:**

Heba is going to meet her friends today.

Mother : What are you going to do with your friends today ?

Heba : We want to have a picnic but we don't know where to go.(1).....?

Mother : Garden Park is a nice place for a picnic.

Heba : Yes, it is. What can I take for the picnic ?

Mother : (2)

Heba : That's a good idea. Do I need my hat today. Mum ?

Mother : (3)..... The sun is very strong today.

Heba : (4)..... ?

Mother : Early in the morning. That's when the sun is not too hot.

Heba : I'll take your advice and wake up early, then!

Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You drop a glass on the kitchen floor. Your younger sister walks into the room.

.....

2. A friend asks you what you thought of a scary film that has just finished.

.....

3. You tell a friend what you did last Saturday at midday.

.....

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

In Sweden, the longest day of the year is celebrated in June. It is the start of a five-week holiday. Most people go on a trip to the country with their families. Children put flowers in their hair and everyone eats a special cake. In the evening, a family meal is eaten. This usually includes herring: there are a lot of these in the sea around Sweden. After people have eaten, they usually go for a walk. Nobody goes to bed before twelve o'clock on this special day! There is sunshine until very late at night in Sweden at this time. In the north, it does not get dark at all! It can be difficult to sleep. To help them, people should find a room that is not very light.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What do most people do in June in Sweden ?
2. How can Swedish people help themselves sleep in the long days of June ?
3. Why do you think that people do not go to bed early in June in Sweden ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "herring" means a type of..... .

a. fish

b. bird

c. ship

d. shell

5. The underlined word "them" refers to.....

- a. children b. people without a house c. people without families d. people in Sweden

4- The Reader

A. Match column A with column B:

1. Farmer Grey	a. The horse who tells the story.
2. Black Beauty	b. A short, fat horse.
3. Merrylegs	c. A horse who had a difficult past.
4. Ginger	d. A horse who forgot his mother's advice.
	f. Black Beauty's first owner.

B. Answer the following questions:

1. Do you think that the horses liked Birtwick Park ? Why ?

.....

2. Do you think that Merrylegs was wrong to throw the older boys off his back? Why? Why not?

.....

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. When is Sham el-Nessim in Egypt ?

- a. celebrated b. celebrate c. celebrates d. celebrating*

2. This book has..... pages than that book.

- a. little b. less c. fewer d. least*

3. People often drink water in hot weather than when it is cold.

- a. less b. least c. more d. most*

4. It is not too hot on the beach because there is a nice.....

- a. breeze b. cloud c. storm d. wave*

5. The restaurant in the guidebook was a very good

- a. recommendation b. parade c. information d. review*

6. I don't know how to get to your house. Can you give me

- a. activities b. directions c. costumes d. conclusions*

6. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. When you go to Luxor, I think you should visit the museum. **(recommend)**

⇒ When you go to luxor, I recommend visiting the museum.

2. The blue bottle has more water than the green bottle. **(less)**

⇒ The green bottle has less water than the blue bottle.

3. Manal always helps people. **(helpful)**

⇒ Manal is always helpful.

7. Write an email of 110 words on of the following:

- You tell your English friend how Mother's Day is celebrated in Egypt.

Practice Test 1A**Finish the following dialogue:**

Seif has just watched a film at Yassin's house.

Seif : That was a very good film.

Yassin : Yes, it was. (1)..... ?

Seif : I was frightened when Detective Zaki was in the desert. Why did he go there ?

Yassin : (2).....

Seif : Now I understand. Do you recommend watching his other detective films ?

Yassin : (3).....

Seif : Ok, I'll take your advice. (4)..... ?

Yassin : You can find many of his films on the internet.

2. Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. A tourist asks you where he can buy a map. You know that the tourist information centre gives out maps for free.

.....

2. Your friend has finished a book. The end of the book made you feel sad. You want to know if your friend thinks the same.

.....

3. A friend asks you what you do before and after dinner.

.....

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

It's my first visit to Egypt. My friends advised me to go to Alexandria. It's summer. However, it is not very hot there, so many tourists go at this time. I'm staying in a hotel in Alexandria now. It is Friday, so there is little traffic in the streets. The hotel is near the sea and I can hear the boats. The hotel is also near the tourist information centre, but it is closed today. Tomorrow I will ask about what I should see in the city. The guidebook says that I should visit Fort Qaitbey. The stones in the fort are from the famous lighthouse. They were used after the lighthouse collapsed in an earthquake in 1303. Best wishes,
Andy

a. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do many tourists Alexandria in summer ?

.....

2. Who do you think Andy is writing this email to and why ?

.....

3. Which place does the guidebook advise Andy to visit ?

.....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The word "collapsed" means.....

a. was built

b. fell

c. started

d- was seen

5. The underlined word "it" refers to

- a. the hotel**
c. the road

- b. the tourist information centre**
d. Fort Qaitbey

The Reader

A. Match column A with column B:

1. Black Beauty	a. She said, "Never bite or kick, even when you are just playing a game".
2. Black Beauty's mother	b. This horse had one white foot.
3. Squire Gordon	c. This horse had short, fat legs.
4. Squire Gordon's wife	d. She named the horse "Black Beauty".
	e. Farmer Grey sold Black Beauty to this person.

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Do you think that Merrylegs was right to behave badly with the children ? Why ? Why not ?

.....

5. Do you think that it was natural for Ginger to change her bad behaviour ? Why ? Why not ?

.....

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- It is cold and windy today. When you go outside, you a coat.
a. wear **b. should wear** **c. shouldn't wear** **d. are wearing**
- students in our school have visited England.
a. Few **b. Little** **c. Less** **d. The least**
- The museum by thousands of tourists every day.
a. visited **b. is visiting** **c. is visited** **d. was visited**
- The students usually stay in a youth..... when they visit the city.
a. hotel **b. centre** **c. hostel** **d. office**
- Salt is often used to..... fish and other food.
a. pack **b. preserve** **c. celebrate** **d. decorate**
- The teacher asked us to write a..... of our visit to the museum.
a. character **b. title** **c. conclusion** **d. description**

6. Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets::

1. March has more days than February. (fewer)

.....

2. You do not have to pay to go into the museum. (free)

.....

3. I advise you to visit Aswan. (should)

.....

7. Write a paragraph of about 110 words on:

A review of a book you liked

Unit 4 Science and Technology

Key Vocabulary

Lessons 1&2

STEM schools	مدارس المتفوقين	make a graph	يرسم مخطط بياني / رسم بياني
expert	خبير	draw a graph	يرسم مخطط بياني
essential	اساسي / ضروري	check	يفحص/يتفحص
develop	يطور	results	نتائج
data	بيانات / معلومات	Focus on	يركز على
hardworking	مجتهد	check results	يفحص نتائج
skill	مهارة	the latest	أحدث
Encourage.... to	يشجع	technology	تكنولوجيا

Extra Vocabulary

science	علوم	solve	يحل
technology	تكنولوجيا	solve problems	يحل المشاكل
engineering	الهندسة	tablet	كمبيوتر لوحى
engineer	مهندس	difficult	صعب
engine	محرك	scientist	عالم
ability	قدرة	interview	مقابلة شخصية
have special skills	لديه مهارات خاصة	around the world	حول العالم
special schools	مدارس خاصة (بفئة معينة)	windy	عاصف
private school	مدرسة خاصة (ملك لشخص)	bored	زهقان - يشعر بالملل
use technology	يستخدم التكنولوجيا	attention	انتباه
the latest technology	أحدث التكنولوجيا	certain	متأكد
fight heart disease	يواجه أمراض القلب	through	من خلال
warm clothes	ملابس دفيئة/ملابس ثقيلة	usual schools	مدارس عادية
maths	رياضيات	medicine	طب / دواء
dinosaur	ديناصور	win an award	يفوز بجائزة
(be) able to + inf	قادر على	heart disease	امراض القلب
look /seem+ صفة	يبدو	archaeologist	عالم آثار
work together	يعمل معا	material	مادة خام
enter competitions	يدخل منافسات	traffic	زحام

Confusing Words

skill	مهارة	similar	مشابه	data	بيانات	easy	سهل	graph	رسم بياني
skull	جمجمة	the same	نفس الشيء	date	تاريخ/بلحة	essay	مقال	photograph	صورة

Adjectives

hardworking	مجتهد	lazy	كسول	easy	سهل	difficult/hard	صعب
late	متأخر	early	مبكر	dry	جاف	wet	مبتل
rich	غني	poor	فقير	different	مختلف	the same	نفس الشيء
modern	حديث	ancient/old	قديم	clever/smart	ذكي	stupid/silly	غبى

Conjugations of irregular verbs

fight	يكافح / يواجه	fought	fought	do	يفعل	did	done
make	يصنع / يجعل	made	made	build	يبني	built	built
send	يرسل	sent	sent	fall	يسقط	fell	fallen
understand	يفهم	understood	understood	win	يفوز	won	won
learn	يتعلم	learnt	learnt	show	يبين / يوضح	showed	shown
learn	يتعلم	learned	learned	ring	يرن	rang	rung

Prepositions & Expressions

focus on + v.ing / n	يركز على	in English	باللغة الانجليزية
encourage + obj + to + inf	يشجع ... أن	at the office	في المكتب
good at + n / v.ing	جيد في	in schools	في المدارس
help + inf / to + inf	يساعد	at home	في المنزل
different to/from	مختلف عن	at work	في العمل
in the future	في المستقبل	at univesity	في الجامعة
interested in +(n / v ing)	مهتم بـ	fall through the air	يسقط خلال الهواء
on hoilday	في أجازة	from around the world	من حول العالم
good at	جيد في	give a ttention	يعطي إهتمام لـ
essential for	أساسي لـ	do a project	ينجز مشروع

Definitions

Encourage	يشجع	to make someone really like and do something
Focus	يركز	to give all your attention to something
Expert	خبير	having very special skills
Essential	ضروري/أساسي	very important
Data	بيانات	information or facts

Language Notes

STEM مدارس المتفوقين للعلوم والتكنولوجيا

(Science, technology, engineering and mathematics)= (STEM).

hardworking مجدد او مجتهد

⇒ STEM school students must be hardworking.

work hard يعمل بجد

⇒ He works hard all the time.

everyday (adj) يومي (صفة)

⇒ The internet has become part of everyday life.

every day (adv) يوميًا (ظرف)

⇒ walk to school every day.

encourage + مفعول + to + inf يشجع لكي

⇒ Teachers encourage students to do projects.

how to + مصدر كيف أن

⇒ We should know how to use the internet. My father taught me how to plat

the last الأخير

⇒ Ali was the last boy to arrive.

the latest الأحدث

⇒ Have you heard the latest news?

the least الأقل

⇒ I have the least homework.

work عمل (لا يبعد) / مكان العمل

⇒ I have got a lot of work to do. Mr Ahmed leaves work at two o'clock.

job (jobs) وظيفة (تجمع)

⇒ He has got a job as a teacher.

Reading

STEM schools

Today, knowing how to use modern technology is essential because people use it every day in schools, at home and at work. It can't be easy if you don't know how to use a computer or send an email. People with many different jobs, such as teachers, engineers and scientists all need to understand how to use the latest technology.

Students who are very good at STEM subjects (science, technology, engineering and maths) can also help develop the technology of the future, STEM schools are special schools which focus on developing students' ability in these subjects. There are now STEM schools around the world where lessons are different to those in usual schools. Teachers encourage students to do projects where they work together to solve problems.

A lesson might be about how fast a ball falls through the air, or it might be using data to make a graph.

Expert teachers help the students through the projects and check their results. In Egypt, there are now STEM schools around the country and more will be built in the future. STEM school students must be hardworking. All their lessons are in English, so that they can understand and use scientific texts from around the world while they study.

Experts say that there will be many more jobs in the future that need skills in STEM subjects. When they finish studying, STEM school students will be able to work in exciting jobs that will use the skills that they have learned.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- 1- Naguib Mahfouz was an Egyptian
a. writer **b. engineer** **c. doctor** **d. athlete**
- 2- Knowing how to use modern technology is because people use it every day.
a. expert **b. essential** **c. encourage** **d. effect**
- 3- English and technology are for getting a good job.
a- useless **b- essential** **c- harmful** **d- difficult**
- 4- It is to take a passport when you travel abroad.
a- enormous **b- essential** **c- hard** **d- bad**
- 5- Ali is always He will do very well in his exams.
a- hardworking **b- exhausted** **c- lazy** **d- noisy**
- 6- I can't on two things at the same time.
a- encourage **b- offer** **c- represent** **d- focus**
- 7- Mohammed Salah showed amazing during the match.
a. silk **b. skills** **c. slums** **d. awards**

- 8- Teachers..... STEM Students to enter Competitions.
a. encourage *b. entertain* *c. interrupt* *d. invent*
- 9- The students used the to draw a graph.
a. electricity *b. e-book* *c. Wi-fi* *d. data*
- 10-If something is essential, it is.....
a. quite difficult *b. very important* *c. not important* *d. very easy*
- 11-The Scientists have..... a new medicine to help fight heart disease.
a. developed *b. dropped* *c. dried* *d. done*
- 12-Ali's cousin is studying at university.
a. engineer *b. engine* *c. engineering* *d. engineers*
- 13-The students studied a which showed the number of tourists who visited Cairo in different months.
a. goal *b. data* *c. future* *d. graph*
- 14-This programme focuses.....developing your ability to work in a team.
a. on *b. from* *c. with* *d. of*
- 15-STEM schools areschools which focus on developing students' abilities .
a. private *b. special* *c. personal* *d. own*
- 16-Our try to develop education.
a. experiments *b. exports* *c. experts* *d. experiences*
- 17-Children shouldhow to develop their skills.
a. learn *b. do* *c. teach* *d. make*
- 18-STEM school students follow thetechnology.
a. latter *b. late* *c. least* *d. latest*
- 19-In STEM schools, all the lessons are English.
a. in *b. at* *c. by* *d. with*
- 20-The students used thefrom the experiment to draw a graph.
a. tablet *b. data* *c. skill* *d. problem*

Expressing certainty and uncertainty

عند التأكد من حدوث شيء أو صحة شيء نستخدم:

لابد أن يكون + must be

- ⇒ You must be Salma's sister You look very similar!
- ⇒ STEM school students must be hardworking
- ⇒ Manal must be at home. I can see lights on in her house.
- ⇒ In this photo, everyone is wearing warm clothes. It must be very cold there.
- ⇒ You've been working very hard today, Mum. You must be tired.
- ⇒ The man who is running must be fit.
- ⇒ Some scientists have to work in Antarctica. It must be very cold, difficult work.

I'm sure/certain فاعل is	متأكد أن	} = فاعل must be
I feel sure فاعل is.....	متأكد أن	
Surely /Certainly / Definieyly فاعل is ...	بالطبع/بالتأكيد	
It's true فاعل is....	إنه حقيقي أن	

• I'm sure Ali is clever. He gets the full mark. **(must be)**

⇒ Ali must be clever. He gets the full mark.

• He is very clever. I'm sure. **(must be)**

⇒ He must be very clever.

• He got the full mark. He must be clever. **(sure)**

⇒ He got the full mark. I'm sure he is clever.

عند التأكد من عدم حدوث شيء أو عدم صحته أو استحالة حدوث شيء نستخدم:

لا يمكن أن can't be + فاعل

⇒ It can't be easy if you don't know how to use a computer or send an email

⇒ That can't be a real dinosaur There aren't any dinosaurs on earth!

⇒ I'm sure it is a British coin; it can't be Egyptian.

⇒ The girls can't be sad because they're having fun.

⇒ This can't be Hassan's bicycle. He doesn't have one.

I'm sure/certain فاعل isn't	متأكد ... لا	} = فاعل can't be
I feel sure فاعل isn't	متأكد ... لا	
Surely /Certainly / Definieyly فاعل isn't	بالطبع لا	
It's untrue فاعل is	إنه غير حقيقي أن	

• I'm sure Ali isn't at home. I've just met him at the zoo. **(can't)**

⇒ Ali can't be at home. I've just met him at the zoo.

• I'm sure it isn't easy to learn Japanese. **(can't be)**

⇒ It can't be easy to learn Japanese.

• I feel sure this is not a real dinosaur. There aren't any dinosaurs on earth. **(can't)**

⇒ This can't be a real dinosaur because there aren't any dinosaurs on earth.

• Ahmed lives in an old house. he can't be rich. **(isn't)**

⇒ Ahmed lives in an old house. I'm sure he isn't rich.

عند عدم التأكد من حدوث شيء أو عدم حدوثه :

من المحتمل أن might be + فاعل

- ⇒ The phone is ringing. It might be Aunt Mona, but I'm not sure.
- ⇒ If there's a lot of traffic, I might be late.
- ⇒ I'm not sure what the weather will be like tomorrow. It might be hot or windy.
- ⇒ "Is this Nadia's bag?" "It might be. Let's see if her books are in it."
- ⇒ lesson might be about how fast a ball falls through the air.
- ⇒ It might be using data to make a graph.
- ⇒ Take a bottle of water with you. It might be very hot today.
- ⇒ Your father has a lot of work to do at the office. He might be home late.
- ⇒ Mona is very interested in ancient history. She might be an archaeologist one day.

I'm not sure/certain فاعل is	انا لست متأكد	} = فاعل might be
It's possible/probable فاعل is.....	إنه محتمل أن	
Possibly /Probably/Perhaps فاعل is...	من المحتمل/ربما	
I don't think فاعل is.....	لا أعتقد	

• Perhaps this coin is Egyptian. I'm not certain. **(might)**

⇒ This coin might be Egyptian.

• Asmaa is absent. It's probable that she is ill. **(might)**

⇒ Asmaa is absent. She might be ill.

• She might be at home. **(probable)**

⇒ It's probable that she is at home.

لاحظ كيفية استبدال can't — must

• He must be late. **(can't be)**

⇒ He can't be early.

• Maya must be ill. **(can't)**

⇒ Maya can't be well

• He must be happy. **(can't)**

⇒ He can't be sad.

1-I'm not sure if Nada will visit us next week.

(might)

2-Perhaps I'll wear a jacket today. I'm not sure.

(might)

- 3- I'm sure that my friend Adel is not at school now. He's gone on holiday for 3 days. (can't)
- 4- He must be rich. (can't)
- 5- I know that it is my pen. It is the only one that is red. (must)
- 6- I'm not sure if this man is a tourist. (might)
- 7- I'm sure Work in Antarctica isn't very easy. (can't)
- 8- Adel might visit us tomorrow. (I'm not sure)
- 9- Perhaps Amal is in the office now. (might)
- 10- Samir must be ready for the exam. (I'm sure that)
- 11- It is certain that Ramy isn't in the club. (can't)
- 12- Mona might be an archaeologist. (I'm not sure)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1. In this photo everyone is wearing warm clothes. It.....hot.
 a. must be b. can't be c. should be d. might be
2. I'm sure it is a British coin, it be Egyptian.
 a. must b. might c. sure d. can't
3. This Yasser's car. He doesn't have one.
 a. can't be b. must be c. might be d. can be
4. Ahmad be friends with Hassan. He doesn't know his name.
 a. must b. can't c. could d. mustn't
5. The touristsbe happy. They are smiling and taking photos .
 a. must b. can't c. should d. shouldn't
- 21- Wear your coat. It rain today.
 a. can't b. must c. mustn't d. might
6. The phone is ringing. It my friend Samy. I'm not sure.
 a. may b. might be c. should be d. must

7. Igo to the party. I'm not sure.
a. must **b. can't be** **c. might** **d. must be**
8. STEM school studentsbe hardworking.
a- can't **b- must** **c- mustn't** **d- might**
9. she has a lot of work to do. she.....free.
a. must **b. must be** **c. Can't be** **d. can**
10. There is a lot of traffic today. We be late.
a. couldn't **b. should** **c. might** **d. won't**
11. It be hot in the desert in summer.
a. can **b. must** **c. might** **d. mustn't**
12. You joking! A camel can't fly.
a. mustn't be **b. can't be** **c. might be** **d. must be**
13. It's a gold watch. It..... be very expensive.
a. must **b. might** **c. can't** **d. mustn't**
14. Hatim is absent. He ill, who knows?
a. mustn't be **b. can't be** **c. might be** **d. must be**
15. You won first prize! You very happy.
a. mustn't be **b. can't be** **c. might be** **d. must be**
16. We're not sure how old this coin is. It.....hundreds of years old.
a. will **b. can't be** **c. might be** **d. must be**
17. The museum.....closed. There are no lights on.
a. must be **b. can't be** **c. might be** **d. should**
18. That Ali in the street. He's gone away on holiday for two weeks.
a. must be **b. can't be** **c. maybe** **d. should be**

Finish the following dialogue:

Dalia and Raghda are talking about STEM schools.

Oalia : Do you know the STEM subjects ?

Raghda : Yes, they are science, technology, engineering and maths. They are essential.

Dalia : (1)..... ?

Raghda : Because they help develop the technology of the future.

Dalia : Are STEM schools similar to the usual ones ?

Raghda : (2).....

Dalia : In what language are the STEM subjects ?

Raghda : (3).....

Dalia : (4)..... ?

Raghda : Yes, there are STEM schools in Egypt.

Key Vocabulary

Lessons 3&4

wi-fi (wireless fidelity)	واي فاي	award	جائزة
e-book	كتاب إلكتروني	reward	مكافأة
achieve	يحقق	rewarding	مُجز
achievement	إنجاز	coin	عملة معدنية
smart phone	هاتف ذكي	do well	يؤدي جيد
online ≠ offline	متصل بالانترنت ≠ غير متصل	chance	فرصة

Extra Vocabulary

probably	من المحتمل	experiment	تجربة علمية
Likely	من المحتمل	type	يكتب على الكمبيوتر
perhaps	ربما	How good	ما درجة إجادة. ؟
certain	متأكد	essay	مقالة
uncertain	غير متأكد	prize	جائزة
gold medal	ميدالية ذهبية	electricity	الكهرباء
laptop	كمبيوتر محمول	science competition	مسابقة علمية
competition	منافسة - مسابقة	geography	جغرافيا
drinking water	ماء الشرب	academic	اكاديمي
dirty water	مياه غير نظيفة	neat handwriting	خط منسق
Polluted water	ماء ملوث	powerful	قوى
forms of technology	أشكال التكنولوجيا	remove	يزيل
polluted (adj)	ملوث	proud	فخور
cause	يسبب	important	مهم
the internet	الانترنت	source	مصدر
information	معلومات	international	دولي
fresh water	ماء عذب	café	مقهى (مكان)
invention	إختراع	sports shoes	أحذية رياضية
realise	يدرك	sports shop	محل لبيع الأحذية
check	يفحص/يتأكد	sports equipment	معدات رياضية
archaeologist	عالم آثار	coffee	قهوة (مشروب)
experience	خبرة	British	بريطاني
produce	ينتج	tool	أداة
production	انتاج - منتجات	print	يطبع
animal waste	فضالت الحيوانات	prevent	يمنع
device	جهاز	amazing	مدهش
local materials	مواد محلية	pleased	مسرور

Confusing Words

pollution	تلوث	invention	إختراع	expert	خبير	price	سعر	way	طريق
population	عدد السكان	discovery	إكتشاف	experience	خبرة	prize	جائزة	weigh	يزن

Conjugations of irregular verbs:

tell	يخبر	told	told	take	يأخذ	took	taken
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk	win	يفوز	won	won

Prepositions & Expressions

draw/make a graph	يرسم مخطط بياني	on the internet	علي الانترنت
develop an invention	يطور إختراع	on the computer	علي الكمبيوتر
connect to	يتصل بـ	do a quiz	يحل إمتحان صغير
pleased to	مسرور أن	talk about	يتحدث عن
win an award for	يفوز بجائزة في	in the same way	بنفس الطريقة
cause a problem	يسبب مشكلة	at a low price	بسعر منخفض
caused by	يحدث عن طريق	ways to	طرق لـ/أساليب لـ
read online	يقراً عبر الانترنت	guess a meaning	يخمن المعني
form of	شكل من / نوع من	stay healthy	يبقي صحياً
in the future	مستقبل	in the past	ماضي
hear from	يسمع من/يتلقي أخبار من	work well	يعمل جيداً

Definitions

Ebook كتاب الكتروني	a book that can be read online
Award جائزة/منحة(رسمية)	a prize someone gets for something they have achieved
wi-fi واي فاي	something which allows computers and mobile phones to connect to the internet
Smartphone هاتف ذكي	a mobile phone that can work like a computer
Laptop لاب توب	a small computer that you can carry with you

Language Notes

award جائزة/منحة رسمية
reward مكافأة(غير رسمية)

Omar won an award for his amazing invention.
 The teacher gave Khaled this pen as a reward

allow مصدر + مفعول يسمح

The teacher allowed us to go out.

let مصدر + مفعول يسمح

The teacher let us go out

the same اسم نفس

Ahmed and Ali are the same age.

similar to اسم مشابه لـ

Ali's camera is similar to mine

win يفوز (مباراة – جائزة – مسابقة)

⇒ I won a cup last week.

earn يكسب مال

⇒ My uncle earns a lot of money.

gain يكتسب (مهارة – خبرة – شيء معنوي)

⇒ I gained a lot of information when I read that book.

as ك (مع الوظائف)

⇒ He works as an engineer

such as مثل (لاعطاء مثال)

⇒ I like all subjects such as English, Arabic and scienc.

like مثل (اللتشبية/التمثيل)

⇒ My teacher is like my father

Reading

Successful stem school student Students in Egyptian STEM schools are encouraged to try to solve essential problems like pollution and energy production. Abdel Rahman Sharaf Eldeen and Mohamed Abd Elsalam, from 6 October STEM School, entered a competition in Italy in 2015. Their project helps to produce energy from animal waste and prevent pollution.

Noha Shoukry and Asmaa Atef, from El Maadi STEM School, invented a device that removes salt from water using hightechnology. It produces drinking water at a low price .Yasmine Yehia. from the same school, invented a device that uses local materials. It cleans polluted water and produces a source of energy. The three girls won prizes in a competition in the USA in 2015. The families of all these students must be very proud.

Tapescript

Interviewer: Studying at a STEM school can't be easy- Only students who are very good at science, technology, engineering and maths can study at the schools and we have to work hard when I get there, but studying time at a STEM school must be very rewarding. Today, I have some students from STEM schools with me. They're going to tell us about their amazing achievements. First of all, Azza is going to talk about an award that she has won.

Azza : Hello! I won an award for the project that I did at my STEM school. First of all, our class studied the problems caused by polluted water around the world. I understood that people definitely can't stay healthy if they have to drink polluted water. So, I also studied plants and realised that some of them can clean dirty water. I asked myself, Could this be a way to solve the problem?

Interviewer: What happened next?

Azza : I developed an invention that cleans polluted water using only plants. I am sure that this can help people living in places that do not have fresh water. After we checked that the invention worked well, I entered a science competition in the USA. I was very pleased to win an award. I think my invention might be important. Now I want to take it around the world. There is a chance that it could help millions of people.

Interviewer: I think you're probably right.

Work in pairs and do the quiz. How good are you with new technology?

Tools For Life

- 1 Your teacher asks you to write an essay. Which do you prefer?
 - a Writing it using neat handwriting.
 - b Typing it on the computer and emailing it.
- 2 Your favourite writer has written a new story. Would you prefer to
 - a find the book in the nearest bookshop?
 - b buy the story as an ebook?
- 3 Your friend says you can print something from their laptop, but you have never used the printer before. Do you
 - a ask your friend how it works?
 - b find out how it works from the internet?
- 4 There is a new ticket machine at the train station. Do you
 - a buy your ticket from the ticket office because that is what you always do?
 - b use the ticket machine to see how it works?
- 5 Your parents say that you can buy new sports shoes. Do you
 - a buy them from the sports shop because you like looking at the sports equipment?
 - b buy them online because this is usually less expensive?



Discuss in pairs

- 1 If you answered **b** to most of the quiz questions, you probably like new technology. Is this true?
- 2 Why do you think that it is important to understand and use new technology?
- 3 Why do you think that old people sometimes find it difficult to use new technology?

Expressing certainty and uncertainty

Express certainty التأكيد

I'm sure فاعل is.....	متأكد أن	I'm sure he is clever. He studied hard.
فاعل must be	لابد أنه	He must be clever. He got high mark
فاعل can't be....	من المستحيل أن	He can't be clever. He got low marks

Express uncertainty عدم التأكيد

I'm not sure فاعل is.....	لست متأكد أن	I'm not sure Amr is at school.
فاعل might/might be	ربما	He might be at the club. I'm not sure
Perhaps فاعل will	ربما	Perhaps he will go to Cairo. I'm not certain.

- Your mother asks you how you did on your English exam . Express certainty.
⇒ I'm sure I did well. / I must be getting the full mark.
- You are not sure that Ali will win the race.
⇒ I'm not sure that Ali will win the race./ Ali might win the race.
- Ahmed will come by train. Express uncertainty.
⇒ Perhaps Ahmed will come by train./I'm not sure Ahmed will come by train.
- You are sure your father is late because of the traffic jam
⇒ I'm sure my father is late because of the traffic jam

Write what do you say in the following situations

1- Your sister thinks she saw a cat in the hospital. You are certain that cats aren't allowed in the hospital.

.....

2- Your mother asks you how you did on your English Exam. Express certainty.

.....

3- Your mother is in the kitchen. You're certain.

.....

4- Your friend asks you about the weather tomorrow. You're not certain.

.....

5- You are asked about your exam. You're sure of getting the full marks.

.....

6- You express uncertainty of watching the football match at the stadium.

.....

7- Your friend says that English is difficult. You don't think this is correct.

8- You are certain that your team will win the cup.

9- You are certain that old people find it difficult to use new technology.

10-You are sure that your father is not at home.

11-You are certain that people find it difficult to use new technology.

12-Your friend asks you about STEM schools.

13-Your mother is in the kitchen. you are certain.

14-You express uncertainty of watching the football match at the stadium.

15-You are certain that your team will win the cup.

16-Your sister thinks she saw a dog in the hospital. You're certain that dogs aren't allowed in the hospital.

17-A friend says that Athens is bigger than London. you don't think this is right.

Finish the following dialogue:

A dialogue between Reda and a tourist.

Reda : What's your name ?

Tourist : My name is John Adams.

Reda : (1)

Tourist : I'm from Britain.

Reda : (2)

Tourist : I'll stay here for 2 weeks.

Reda : What are you interested in ?

Tourist : (3)

Reda : Why are you here in Egypt ?

Tourist : (4)

Reda : You're right. The Egyptian history is very exciting.

Unit 5 Achievements

Important Vocabulary

Lessons 1&2

achievements	إنجازات	intelligent	ذكي - بارع
genius (n) (adj)	شخص عبقري / عبقري	computer programming	برمجة الكمبيوتر
a child genius	طفل عبقري	develop	يطور
software	برامج الحاسوب	developed	متقدم - متطور
skill	مهارة	sum	مسألة حسابية
award	جائزة	graduate	خريج - يتخرج
degree	شهادة - درجة	university graduates	خريجي الجامعات
shows	عروض تلفزيونية/مسرحية	highly developed	متطور بدرجة عالية
improve	يحسن	business	عمل

Important Vocabulary

give answers	يعطي إجابات	newspaper	جريدة
take a rest	يأخذ راحة - يستريح	article	مقالة
as well as	بالإضافة إلى	math problems	مسألة حسابية
development	تطوير - نمو	yet	حتى الآن - بعد
brain	مخ	only	فقط
developed brain	عقل منفتح	able to	قادر على
system	نظام	TV channel	قناة تلفزيونية
math skills	مهارات خاصة بالرياضيات	several	متنوع - متعدد
ability	قدرة	swimmer	سباح
.However,	مع ذلك	tourism	السياحة
improvement	تقدم - تحسين	quickly	بسرعة
high level	مستوى عالي	slowly	ببطء
result	نتيجة	fire	نار - حريق
offer	عرض مالي/عرض مساعدة	firefighters	رجال الإطفاء
American University	الجامعة الأمريكية	chess	لعبة الشطرنج
walk past	يمر ماشيا	amazing brain	عقل مذهل
special	خاص	greatest	أعظم
repair=mend= fix	يصلح	parents	والدين
as well as	أيضا	competition	منافسة - مسابقة
trophy	إكليل - كأس مسابقة	expression	تعبير - لفظ
private lessons	دروس خصوصية	wardrobe	دولاب ملابس
computer software business	شركات برمجيات الحاسب	race	سباق

Opposites

possible	ممكّن	ability	قدرة	better than	افضل من..
impossible	مستحيل	inability	عجز - قصور	worse than	اسوء من..
lazy	كسول	software	برامج الحاسوب	polite	مؤدّب
active	نشيط	hardware	أجزاء الحاسوب	impolite=rude	غير مؤدّب

Confusing Words

improve	يُحسن	degree	درجة علمية/شهادة	software	برامج الحاسب	homework	واجب منزلي
prove	يُثبت	mark	درجة إمتحان / حرارة	hardware	مكونات الحاسب	housework	أعمال منزلية

Conjugations of irregular verbs:

get	يحصل علي	got	got	write	يكتب	wrote	written
understand	يفهم	understood	understood	take	يأخذ	took	taken
hear	يسمع	heard	heard	put	يضع	put	put
learn	يتعلم	learned/learnt	learned/learnt	give	يعطي	gave	given
teach	يعلم	taught	taught	win	يفوز	won	won
tell	يخبر	told	told	speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken

Prepositions & Expressions

at the age of ..	في عمر	invite ... to....	يدعو إلى....
do a sum/work out a sum	يحل مسألة	interested in	مهتم بـ
on shows	في العروض التلفزيونية/المشرحية	write a system	يؤلف نظام
Get a degree	يحصل علي درجة علمية	work out	يحل
get a medal	يحصل على ميدالية	put out	يطفيء حريق
got several awards	يحصل علي جوائز عديدة	fall over	يسقط
give answers to	يعطي حلول لـ	at the beach	في الشاطيء
start a degree	يبدأ الدراسة من أجل درجة علمية	come into	يدخل
a genius at	شخص عبقرى في	at the concert	في الحفلة الموسيقية
finish school	ينهي الدراسة	do amazing things	يقوم بأشياء مذهلة
at a high level	بمستوي عال	speak to	يتحدث مع

Definitions

Genius	شخص عبقرى	A person with a very highly developed brain.
Intelligent	ذكى	Very quick to learn and understand.
Skill	مهارة	An ability to do something.
Sum	مسألة	Maths problem to work out.
Award	جائزة	A prize given for an achievement
Software	برامج	The different systems used by a computer
Computer programming	برمجة الكمبيوتر	Writing the systems that make a computer work.

Language Notes

help يساعد لى / مصدر + مصدر + مفعول

⇒ The university helped him to study maths.

help يساعد فى with + N مفعول

⇒ He helped me with homework.

at the age of فى عمر = when فاعل was / were + العمر

⇒ He won the championship at the age of 16.

⇒ He won the championship when he was 16.

in the age of فى عصر

⇒ We live in the age of technology .

graduate from يتخرج من

⇒ He graduated from the Faculty of Medicine.

a graduate of خريج لـ

⇒ He is a graduate of Cairo University.

A Six-year-old student. كلمة year لا تجمع هنا لأنها صفة

⇒ A Six-year-old student could study computer programming.

Reading

Six-year-old Abla Wael from Cairo couldn't do her maths homework one evening. Her father was helping her when her younger brother came into the room. Mahmoud couldn't speak very well yet because he was only three. However, he was able to give all the answers to the sums.

Mahmoud's father was sure that his son was a genius. Soon, TV channels heard about his amazing maths skills and invited him to be on their shows.

When Mahmoud was seven, the American University in Cairo helped him to improve his English because it would help him to study maths at a high level. After only three months, he could read, write and speak English quite well.

One day, Mahmoud walked past a class that was studying computer programming at the university and he could understand the lesson. Soon one of the biggest computer software business in the world became interested in Mahmoud because he was so intelligent. He studied computer programming and got several awards. He was then able to teach university graduates about computer programming. He was only eleven!

Universities around the world invited Mahmoud to start a degree, but he decided to finish school first. He said that he would like to go to university in Egypt.

Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d

- 1- First, Rania got a/an.....in medicine, then she got a job in the hospital
a. plan b. trophy c. award d. Degree
- 2- My brother is very good at maths.he does many.....correctly.
a. sums b. awards c. questions d. prizes
- 3- A: Which university did your mother.....from? B: from Benha university.
a. achieve b. improve c. graduate d. emphasize
- 4- My friend got a.....for winning a race.
a. medal b. metal c.money d. juice
- 5- 6. My grandfather was very intelligent, and got several.....
a. sums b. awards c. brains d. months
- 6- The Noble Prizes are.....given to the great people.
a. awards b. degrees c. medals d. presents
- 7- This programme focuses developing your ability to work in a team.
a. on b. with c. from d. of
- 8- First, Rania gotin medicine, then she got a job in the hospital.
a. a plan b. a trophy c. an award d. a degree
- 9- Leila could read when she was two. She is a

- 10-at the age of eleven, Mahmoud wael was a university.....
 a. teacher b. team c. degree d. graduate
- 11- Hamdy.....me to his birthday party.
 a. asked b. invited c. invented d. saw
- 12-Ali is genius maths.
 a. for b. in c. at d. on
- 13-This course will help you to..... your English.
 a. improve b. prove c. remove d. move
- 14-There are a lot of TV that will show the final match on air.
 a. channels b. canals c. studios d. programmes
- 15- My brother couldn't the maths exercise yesterday.
 a. think b. solve c. do d. make
- 16-How quickly can you work out the answers to these maths?
 a. medals b. skills c. programmes d. sums
- 17-A..... is someone who is very intelligent.
 a. genius b. team c. stupid d. graduate
- 18-The player showed amazing during the football match.
 a. skulls b. skills c.programmes d. sums
- 19-My brother is going to study computer at university.
 a. programming b. making c.selling d. playing

Ability or Inability القدرة وعدم القدرة

القدرة على فعل شيء في الماضي (بوجه عام)

مصدر + could + فاعل

- I could swim when I was six.
- After only three months, he could read, write and speak English quite well.

السؤال بهل:

هل استطاع أن Could + فاعل + inf?
Yes, ضمير could. No, ضمير couldn't

- Could you read when you were six?

⇒ Yes, I could. / No, I couldn't

السؤال بأداة استفهام

WH + could + فاعل + مصدر?
مصدر could + فاعل

- What could you do when you were five?

⇒ I could do sums.

القدرة على فعل شيء في الماضي (في موقف معين)

مصدر + was/were able to + فاعل

- The exam was difficult, but I was able to answer all the questions easily.
- I was able to find your book, but I couldn't find mine.
- was able to swim across the Nile River.
- He was able to put it out very quickly.
- They were able to type fast on keyboard.

السؤال بهل:

هل إستطاع أن **Was/Were + فاعل able to+ inf?**
Yes, ضمير was/were. No, ضمير wasn't/weren't

- **Were you able to do the homework?**

⇒ Yes, I was. / No, I wasn't.

السؤال بأداة إستفهام

WH + was/were + فاعل able to+ inf?
مصدر + was/were able to + فاعل

- **What were you able to see at the concert?**

⇒ I was able to see lots of mt friends.

عدم القدرة على فعل شيء في الماضي

مصدر + couldn't + فاعل
مصدر + wasn't/weren't able to + فاعل

- When I was young ,I couldn't ride a bike.
- At the age of two, my brother couldn't ride a bike.
- When I was young ,I couldn't ride a bike.
- At the age of two, my brother couldn't ride a bike.
- I wasn't able to come to your house last weekend because I was ill.

يمكن التعبير عن القدرة في لماضي بـ

كان قادر علي **was/were capable of + V + ing + فاعل**
كان لديه القدرة أن **had the ability to + مصدر + فاعل**

- I was cabaale of playind chess when I was ten.
- I had the ability to play chess when I was ten.

Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- 1- last month, I wasn't able to climb that wall. (couldn't)
 ➤ last month, I couldn't climb that wall
- 2- When he was young, he played football well. (could)
 ➤ When he was young, he could play football well
- 3- I couldn't find the pen that you lost. (able)
 ➤ I wasn't able to find the pen that you lost
- 4- Why couldn't they solve the problem? (able to)
 ➤ Why weren't they able to solve the problem?
- 5- Could you speak English when you were young? (were you)
 ➤ Were you able to speak English when you were young?
- 6- Could he repair the car alone? (Was)
- 7- What were you able to do when you were twelve? (could)
- 8- When Hatim was ten, he had the ability to ride the bike alone. (could)
- 9- Why couldn't he solve the problem? (able to)
- 10- Nadia could play the piano in an early age. (to)
- 11- Mona wasn't able to finish the project yesterday (could)
- 12- Mahmoud Wael could give all the answers to the sums. (able)
- 13- Could you find the lost bag? (Were)
- 14- Ahmed spoke two languages when he was 12. (able)
- 15- He couldn't use the new mobile. (able)
- 16- Ahmed couldn't get the full marks. (able)
- 17- Heba could speak two languages when she was ten. (able)
- 18- Noha wasn't able to leave early last Monday. (couldn't)

19- She wasn't able to do her homework yesterday.

(could)

choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d

1. The maths homework was very difficult. Were you do it?
a. able to b. could c. should d. Can
2. why weren't you do the maths homework? Was it difficult?
a. able to b. could c. able d. can
- 20-Heride a bike when he was six.
a. could b. can c. able d. was able
3. When I was ten, I was.....to swim.
a. could b. can c. able d. Couldn't
4. Icome to your office last week because I was ill.
a. Weren't able to b. Didn't have c. Wasn't able to d. could
5. Mozartplay music when he was three.
a. can b. is able to c. was able to d. must
6. I was able to fix my computer; this mean that I.....fix it.
a. can't b. couldn't c. could d. didn't
7.you ride a bike when you were five?
a. Can b. Able to c. Were d. Could
8. Hespeak, read and write English quite well after only five years.
a. capable of b. able to c. could d. is able
9. There was afire at the hotel , but firefighters.....to put it out very quickly.
a. were able b. was able c. could d. Couldn't
10.you able to speak to the teacher today about the homework?
a. can b. Was c. Were d. Could
11. Ito come to your house last weekend because I was ill.
a. can't b. wasn't able c. weren't able d. couldn't
12. My friend.....answer all the questions correctly in the math test.
a. has b. Was able c. Were able d. could
13. My brother swim until he was about ten.
a.wasn't able b. can't c. couldn't d. weren't able
14. Whatyou able to see at the concert?
a. could b. was c. did d. were
15. I come to your office last week because I was ill.
a. could b. didn't have to c. wasn't able to d. weren't able to
16. you able to speak to the teacher today about the homework?
a. Were b. Could c. Was d. Do
17. My sister swim when she was seven.
a. am able to b. can c. could d. able to
18. you speak English when you were six?
a. Were b. Do c. Able d. Could

19. He speak, read and write English quite well after only five years.
a. capable of **b. able to** **c. could** **d. is able**
20. The maths homework was very difficult. Were you do it?
a. able to **b. could** **c. should** **d. can**
21. When you were ten,stand on one leg?
a. could you **b. can you** **c. were you able** **d. do you**
22. I wasn't able the heavy box yesterday.
a. carry **b. to carry** **c. to carrying** **d. carried**
23. Were you able to answer all the difficult questions? Yes, I.....
a. wasn't **b. were** **c. can** **d. was**
24. Gamal could all his homework alone.
a. do **b. did** **c. done** **d. doing**
25. I could drive my father's car when I was sixteen, but my brother drive it until he was eighteen.
a. Can't **b. Couldn't** **c. Wasn't able** **d. could**

Key Vocabulary

Lessons 3&4

achieve	يحقّق/ينجز	In addition,	بالإضافة إلى ذلك
achievements	إنجازات	degree	درجة علمية
trophy	كأس - نصب تذكاري	Furthermore,	علاوة على ذلك
athlete	لاعب رياضي/لاعب ألعاب قوي	In addition to	بالإضافة إلى ذلك
medal	ميدالية	However,	مع ذلك/بالرغم من ذلك
results	نتائج	award	جائزة
memorise	يحفظ	special	مميز

Important Vocabulary

active	نشيط/حيوي	a sports team	فريق رياضي
definitely	بالتأكيد	good results	نتائج جيدة
competition	مسابقة/منافسة	what kind of	ما نوع... ؟
race	سباق	repair	يصلح
either.. or...	إما... أو....	tour guide	مرشد سياحي
Neither nor....	لا ولا.....	excellent	ممتاز - رائع
Not only	ليس فقط	Olympic athlete	بطل أولمبي
Olympic athlete	لاعب أولمبياد	score goals	يسجل أهداف
university course	منهج جامعي	football match	مباراة كرة قدم
swimmer	سباح	beach	شاطئ
correctly	بطريقة صحيحة	Cycling team	فريق الدراجات

cycling	ركوب الدراجات	possible	ممکن
practise	يمارس - يتمرن	both	كلاهما
practice	ممارسة - تمرين	during	أثناء
ordinary	عادي	person	شخص
course	دورة تدريبية	people	ناس
complete	يكمل	newest	الأحدث
brain	مخ (داخل الرأس)	far from	بعيد عن
mind	عقل (طريقة التفكير)	drops	قطرات
furniture	أثاث منزلي	research	بحث
French	اللغة الفرنسية	scientist	عالم
great	عظيم	test	اختبار
private lessons	دروس خصوصية	amazing	مدهش
medicine	دواء/الطب	system	نظام
tourist	سائح	cousin	ابن أو بنت العم/الخال
tourism	سياحة	plan	خطة

opposites

ability	قدرة	inability	عدم القدرة	polite	مؤدب	impolite	غير مؤدب
possible	ممکن	impossible	مستحيل	active	نشيط	lazy	كسول
newest	الأجدد	oldest	الأقدم				

Confusing Words

complete	يكمل	curse	لعنة	medal	ميدالية	win	يفوز	practice	تدريب
compete	ينافس	course	منهج دراسي	model	نموذج	beat	يهزم	practice	يتدرب

Singular&Plural

child	طفل	person	شخص	ox	ثور	mouse	فأر	man	رجل
children	أطفال	people	ناس	oxen	ثيران	mice	فئران	men	رجال

Conjugations of irregular verbs:

choose	يختار	chose	chosen	swim	يسبح	swam	swum
spell	يتهجى	spelt	spelt	know	يعرف	knew	known
get	يحصل على	got	gotten	win	يفوز	won	won

Prepositions & Expressions

achieve a result	يحقق نتيجة	look after	يعتني بـ
get a medal	يحصل على ميدالية	on time	في الوقت المحدد
get/win an award	يحصل على جائزة	in time	في الوقت المناسب
get a degree	يحصل على درجة علمية/شهادة	win a race	يفوز بسباق
get a job	يحصل على وظيفة	win a trophy	يفوز بكأس
show skills	يظهر مهارة	in the blue shirt	يرتدي القميص الأزرق
on shows	يظهر في برامج	work as a doctor	يعمل كطبيب
at the end of	في نهاية..	have interview with	يجري مقابلة مع
at a high level	على مستوى عالي	discover a medicine	يكتشف دواء
at the age of	في عمر	in the world	في العالم
before the age of	قبل عمر	in his twenties (20s)	في العشرينات من عمره
count to	يعد حتي	that's amazing!	هذا مذهش

Definitions

Award جائزة	A prize given for an achievement .
Degree درجة علمية	A qualification given to someone who finished the course.
Medal ميدالية	A round piece of metal given as a prize to someone who won.
Trophy كأس	A prize for winning a competition (a silver cup).

Language Notes

إما أو (إثبات) **either..... or**

⇒ She is either a doctor or an engineer.

لا..... ولا..... (النفى) **neither..... nor.....**

⇒ He is neither at home nor at school.

ميدالية (تمنح للاعب واحد/او كل لاعب على حدة) Medal

⇒ Ahmed won /got a medal gold for a swimming race.

كأس (يمنح للفريق ككل) trophy

⇒ Al-ahly won a trophy for wining the final match.

ليس فقط..... ولمن أيضا.. **Not only+ فاعل + فعل , but also فاعل + فعل + فاعل + فعل مساعد**

⇒ Not only could he pass the exam. But also he got the full mark.

Tapescript

Tarek : Did you watch the program on TV last night, Hassan? It was about some very intelligent children.

Hassan : No, I didn't. Tell me about it.

Tarek : Well, One of them, a boy from India became a doctor at the age of 7.
Hassan : Really! He must be a genius.

Tarek : Yes, he is. His parents knew there was something special about him. When he was very young, he could walk and talk before the age of one and he could also read very difficult books when he was only five. He became both the youngest doctor in India and the youngest boy to study medicine at university, he was twelve.

Hassan : That's amazing. What is he doing now?

Tarek : He is in his twenties now and he is still working as a doctor. Then, the TV program had an interview with a young girl from India. When she was eleven, she was the youngest person in a math competition. Not only did she win the competition, but she achieved amazing result, 100%.

Hassan : Wow, she is either a genius or she worked very hard at school.

Tarek : I am sure she is a genius. I work hard at school, too but I am not as good as she is.

An Award to -----

I would like to give my mother an award because she is the best mother in the world. Because she looked after me and my brother and sister, she wasn't able to go to university when she was younger. However, she started studying online two years ago and she has done very well in her exams. She wants to become a teacher one day and teaches young children.

She should get an award because she has shown us that it is possible both to be a good parent and to achieve things for yourself.

adding Information إضافة معلومات

بإضافة إلي ذلك
علاوة علي ذلك

فعل + فاعل . In addition, جملة اولي .
فعل + فاعل . Furthermore, جملة اولي .

- My father always goes to work on time. In addition, he does his work well.
- Ahmed did his homework. Furthermore, he helped his father.
- I could play tennis when I was eight. In addition, I could use the internet.

بإضافة إلي ذلك
بإضافة إلي ذلك

فعل + فاعل , In addition to+ ing
فعل + فاعل in addition to+ ing

- In addition to going to work on time, my father does his work well.
- In addition to doing his homework, Ali helps his mother every night.
- Ali does his homework in addition to helping his mother every night.

أيضًا - كذلك
أيضًا - كذلك
أيضًا - كذلك

(بداية الجملة) Also
(قبل الفعل الأساسي) also
(بعد v to be) also

- Sami has a mobile. Also I have a mobile.
- Sami has a mobile. I also have a mobile.
- Dina is good at Arabic. She is also good at English.

أيضا (نهاية الجملة المثبتة) ,too / as well

- Tarek is very good at tennis. He's good at basketball, too
- Sally visited Rome. She went to Athens as well.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Mr Bakr is a great teacher., he never gives private lessons.
a. In addition to b. Addition c. More d. Furthermore
- In addition to.....her home work, Arwa helps her mother in the kitchen.
a. do b. doing c. make d. making
- My sister is very polite., she is very active
a. Not more b. Furthermore c. Although d. However
- My cousin is very good at speaking English., he speaks French.
a. In addition to b. Addition c. More d. Furthermore
-reading after dinner, I write emails to friends.
a. In addition to b. Addition c. More d. Furthermore
- We're going to paint the room., we're going to get new furniture.
a. In addition to b. In addition c. Not More d. but

7.being a great player, Ramadan Sobhi scores amazing goals.
a. In addition to b. Addition c. More d. Furthermore
8. My sister is very polite.,she is very active.
a. In addition to b. Addition c. Not More d. Furthermore

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets

- 1- I could play tennis when I was eight. In addition, I could use the internet. **(In addition to)**
 ⇒ In addition to playing tennis when I was eight. I could use the internet.
- 2- He works many hours, in addition, he works on Fridays. **(Furthermore)**
 ⇒ He works many hours, Furthermore, he works on Fridays.
- 3- Toka bought tea yesterday. She bought sugar as well. **(In addition)**
 ⇒ Toka bought tea yesterday. In addition, she bought sugar.
- 4- Tahany likes swimming. She also likes reading. **(In addition)**

- 5- Hassan is interested in reading. He also writes short stories . **(in addition)**

- 6- Soha helped her mother. she did her homework **(In addition to)**

- 7- Omar revises the lessons. Furthermore, he does his homework. **(In addition to)**

- 8- I could play tennis when I was eight. I also could use the internet. **(In addition)**

- 9- Hassan is interested in reading. He also writes short stories. **(In addition)**

- My brother is interested in reading. He also writes poetry. **(in addition to)**

- 10-Soha helped her mother. She did her homework. **(in addition to)**

Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

- 1- You are asked about what you like in addition to swimming.
 ⇒ In addition to swimming, I like reading.
- 2- You tell your friend that you practise sports in your free time. Add the information that you also play games on the internet.
 ⇒ I practise sports in my free time. I also play games on the internet.

3- You tell a friend what you could do when you were young.

⇒ When I was young, I could play games on the internet.

4- friend tells you that he /she got a medal at the age f six.

⇒ That's a mazing!

5- You talk about the things you couldn't do at he age of ten.

.....

6- You ask your friend about the hobbies he was able to do when he was young.

.....

7- You tell your friend that you play video games and you listen to music as well.

.....

8- You are asked things you like doing.

.....

Finish the following dialogue:

Adam and Faris are talking about Dr Ali Moustafa Musharrafa.

Adam: Hi, Faris. What are you doing?

Faris : I'm reading about Dr Ali Moustafa Musharrafa.

Adam: (1)

Faris : Dr Musharrafa was able to work out some really difficult problems maths and science.

Adam: (2)What else does the article say?

Faris : It says here that he was the first Egyptian to become a doctor of science

Adam: That's a great achievement!(3)

Faris : I'm not sure but he was definitely really smart.

Adam: (4)

Faris : I agree. We should do our best to be like him.

Finish the following dialogue:

Ali is meeting a tourist on his way to the museum.

Ali : Hello, when did you arrive in Egypt ?

Tourist : Two days ago.

Ali : (1)

Tourist : Egypt is very nice.

Ali : Where are you staying ?

Tourist : (2)

Ali : How long will you stay in Egypt ?

Tourist : (3)

Ali : (4)

Tourist : I'm going to visit the Pyramids tomorrow.

Ali : I wish you a happy stay in Egypt.

Ali : Thank you.

Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d

- 1- He designed an amazing skyscraper. That's great.....
a. encourage b. entertain c. interrupt d. invent
- 2- A sports team might win a at the end of a competition .
a. degree b. trophy c. Wi.fi d. Smartphone
- 3- Aya is a six-year.....pupil.
a. old b. heavy c. age d. long
- 4- An athlete gets a for winning a race.
a. medal b. metal c.money d. degree
- 5- Student gets a/an for good results.
a. award b. medal c.money d. ticket
- 6- The scientist won an /afor discovering a new medicine.
a. award b. trophy c. degree d. present
- 7- The basketball team won a gold for winning the competition.
a. plan b. trophy c. award d. Degree
- 8- A student gets a for completing a university course.
a. cup b. trophy c. medal d. degree
- 9- Mohammed Salah showed amazing during the match.
a. silk b. skills c. sums d. awards
- 10- In addition to her homework, Arwa helps her mother in the kitchen.
a. do b. doing c. make d. making
- 11- My sister is very polite., she is very active.
a. Not more b. one more c. In addition to d. Furthermore
- 12- Mr Badr is a great teacher., he never gives private lessons.
a. In addition to b. Addition c. More d. Furthermore
- 13- My sister got a / an..... in medicine, then she got a job in the hospital .
a. medal b. trophy c. degree d. award
- 14- Students get afor completing a university course.
a. cup b. medal c. trophy d. degree
- 15- If Omar.....out this difficult sum, he would be given an award.
a. made b. gave c. worked d.took
- 16- He has many.....he can play music, paint pictures and write stories.
a. jobs b. skills c. works d. businesses
- 17- The scientist won a/anfor discovering a new medicine.
a. award b. trophy c. present d. sticker
- 18- Hala speak until she was two.
a. could b. couldn't c. was able to d. wasn't able
- 19- My father always goes to work on time, he does his work well.
a. inside b. in addition c. however d. but
- 20- The plural of shelf is.....
a. shelves b. shelvs c. shelves d. shelf
- 21- Tarek is a genius, he has something
a. special b. stupid c. private d. bad

Unit 6 Inventors

Key Vocabulary

Lessons 1&2

vacuum cleaner	مكنسة كهربائية	voice	صوت انسان
a lawn mower	آلة قص العشب	sound	صوت شيء
entertain	يُسلِّي	soil	تربة
recognise	يتعرف علي	gases	غازات
design	يصمم	cut the grass	يقص حشائش
include	يتضمن - يشمل	feel better	يشعر بتحسن
remind	يُذكر (شخص آخر)	friendly faces	وجوه ودودة
remember	يتذكر (بنفسه)	machine	آلة - ماكينة
useful	نافع - مفيد	robot	إنسان آلي

Extra Vocabulary

invent	يخترع	hot rocks	صخور ساخنة
invention	اختراع	toys	لعب أطفال
inventor	مخترع	a long time	مدة طويلة
emphasise	يؤكد	space	فضاء
planet	كوكب	conversation	محادثة
personal	شخصي	similar	متشابه
interest	يهم	type = kind = sord	نوع
in order to	لكي	under water	تحت الماء
say hello	يرحب	special types	نماذج خاصة
clean floor	ينظف الأرضية	problems	مشاكل
scientific	علمي	environment	بيئة
study the sea	يدرس البحر	nervous	عصبي
volcanoes	براكين	skillfully	بمهارة
others	آخرون	below	اسفل - أدنى
receive	يستقبل	park	منتزه
turn	يدير - يلف - يحول	garden	حديقة
object	مفعول / شيء	personal	شخصي

Kinds of Robots

personal robot	انسان آلي شخصي	robot vacumm cleaner	
scientific robot	انسان آلي علمي		انسان آلي يقوم بدور المكنسة
space robot	انسان آلي لأغراض الفضاء	robot lawn mower	انسان آلي لقص العشب

Word & Opposites

ask	يسأل	answer	يجيب
early	مبكرا	late	متأخر
transitive verb	فعل متعدي	intransitive verb	فعل غير متعدي
turn on	يشغل	turn off	يطفئ

Conjugations of irregular verbs:

give	يعطي	gave	given	think	يعتقد / يفكر	thought	thought
send	يرسل	sent	sent	read	يقرأ	read	read
come	يأتي	came	come	buy	يشترى	bought	bought
feel	يشعر	felt	felt	leave	يغادر / يترك	left	left

Prepositions & Expressions

give a message to	يعطي رسالة لـ	in order to + inf	بغرض - لكي
feel nervous	يشعر بتوتر	move around	يتحرك حول
recognize people	يتعرف علي الناس	remind + to + inf.	يذكر.. شخص بـ
turn its head	يحرك رأسه	design to	يصمم لـ
design a robot	يصمم روبوت	similar to	مشابه لـ
come home	يصل المنزل	belong to + مفعول	يخص - ينتمي إلي
say hello to you	يقول مرحبا بك	on hot days	في أيام حارة

Confusing Words

planet	كوكب	voice	صوت إنسان	invent	يخترع	space	فضاء	person	شخص
plant	نبات	sound	صوت شيء	invite	يدعو	spice	توابل	personal	شخصي

Definitions

A lawn mower	ألق قص العشب	is a machine for cutting grass on lawns.
Vacuum cleaner	مكنسة كهربائية	a machine to keep your house clean
Entertain	يُسلّي - يمتع	do something that interests people
Personal	شخصي	for you or belonging to you
Recognize	يتعرف علي	know a person because you have seen them before
Voice	صوت إنسان	you hear this when someone speaks
Volcano	بركان	a place from which fire and hot rocks sometimes come
Planet	كوكب	a large object in space that moves around a star

Language Notes

other + اسم جمع **خرون**

⇒ Other robots can entertain children and help them to feel better.

others + بدون اسم **خرون**

⇒ Some robots dive under water to study the sea: Others are sent inside volcanoes

another + اسم مفرد **خر**

⇒ In 2012, a robot went to another planet to study the soil

the other+مفرد/ جمع **خر/أخرون**

⇒ The other robots are sent to space.

⇒ The other robot is very useful.

soil **تربة زراعية**

⇒ In 2012, a robot went to a planet to study the soil

floor **أرضية حجرة/ طابق**

⇒ Robot vacuums are used to clean floors.

ground **أرض الشارع**

⇒ He lost his balance and fell to the ground

land **الباينة**

⇒ A third of the earth is land.

remember **يتذكر بنفسه**

⇒ I can't remember where I left my mobile phone.

remind+ to + مفعول **يذكر شخص آخر بـ**

⇒ The robot can remind you to send your e-mails.

help مفعول inf/ to + inf. **يساعد**

⇒ Robots can help children to feel better.

⇒ Robots can help children feel better.

help مفعول with + N **يساعد في**

⇒ Personal robots are designed to help people with jobs at home.

Reading

Scientists have used robots for a long time. Some robots dive under water to study the sea: Others are sent inside volcanoes to study places that are dangerous. In 2012, a robot went to another planet to study the soil and the gases there.

Personal robots are designed to help people with jobs at home. They include robot vacuum cleaner, to clean floors and lawn mowers to cut the grass in parks and gardens.

Now, an engineer has designed a robot that can recognise people. When you speak, it will answer! It will hear your voice and turn its head in order to look at you. It will say hello to you when you come home and it can read a story to children. It can give a message to the right person in the family. It can even remind you to send your emails.

Some robots are designed to have friend faces so that children will think they are toys. These robots are very useful in hospital where they can entertain children and help them to feel better.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- Use the cleaner to clean the kitchen floor.
a. lawn b. mower c. vacuum d. oar
- 2- Use the mower to cut the grass in the garden.
a. vacuum b. oars c. space d. lawn
- 3- means to do something that interests people.
a. Recognise b. Recommend c. Entertain d. Emphasize
- 3- A is a machine to cut the grass in gardens and parks.
a. toy b. lawn mower c. vacuum cleaner d. space robot
- 4- That girl has a very loud I can hear her from across the road.
a. face b. ability c. voice d. head
- 5- I couldn'tmy home village after spending 10 years abroad.
a. unknown b. recognize c. realise d. decide
- 6- Scientists have usedfor a long time.
a. drums b. volcanoes c. Lawn mowers d. robots
- 7- I could hear him because he has a very loud.....
a. graph b. ability c. voice d. sound
- 8- What's the name of the.....who made the first radio?
a. visitor b. worker c. inventor d. discoverer
- 9- Other robots are sent intoinstead of people because it's dangerous work.
a. wells b. earthquakes c. volcanoes d. rocks
- 10- Dr musharfa was anin maths
a. experience b. experiment c. expert d. export
- 11- personal robots are.....to help people with jobs at home
a. done b. designed c. refused d. advised

12- Robots can.....you to send emails.

a. hear

b. forget

c. remember

d. remind

13- Engineers have invented robots that.....you when you speak.

a. hear

b. forget

c. remember

d. remind

الأفعال المتعدية والأفعال الازمة Transitive and intransitive verbs

الأفعال المتعدية Transitive verbs

هي الأفعال التي يجب أن يأتي بعدها مفعول لكي يكتمل المعنى

I bought .

المعنى غير مكتمل

I bought some milk.

المعنى إكتمل

قد يأتي بعد الفعل مفعول واحد فقط.

⇒ We use special types of robots at home.

⇒ I saw a film.

⇒ I bought a new car.

بعض الأفعال المتعدية يأتي بعدها مفعولين:

أحدهما مفعول مباشر (غير عاقل) Direct Object

والآخر مفعول غير مباشر (عاقل) Indirect Object

مفعول مباشر + مفعول غير مباشر + فعل + فاعل

عاقل

غير عاقل

I gave Salma the message.

I bought my mother some milk

Ali sent me an email

Tarek asked me a question.

يمكن أن نضع المفعول المباشر (الشيء) بعد الفعل ولكن بشرط وضع to/for قبل المفعول الغير مباشر (العاقل)

مفعول غير مباشر + to/for + مفعول مباشر + فعل + فاعل

غير عاقل

عاقل

I gave the message to Salma

I bought some milk for my mother

Ali sent an email to me

Tarek asked a question to me

فعال يأتي معها to

send	يرسل	give	يعطي	bring	يحضر	offer	يعرض	lend	يسلف
read	يقرأ	sell	يبيع	show	يوضح	tell	يخبر	pass	يناول
promise	يوعد	bring	يحضر	write	يكتب	post	يرسل	hand	يسلم

buy يشتري	cook يطبخ	get يحصل علي	save يحفظ	make يصنع	leave يترك
keep يحفظ	pour يصب	build يبني	book يحجز	find يجد	bake يخبز

Intransitive verb الفعل اللازم

هي الأفعال التي لا تحتاج مفعول حيث يكتمل المعنى بدون مفعول وتكون الجملة كالتالي:
تكملة + فعل + فاعل

لاحظ : المعنى إكتمل دون مفعول وقد تكون التكملة ظرف/أو عبارة بسيطة

- ⇒ The baby is sleeping. ⇒ Ahmed runs fast.
⇒ In 2012, a robot went to another planet. ⇒ We left early in the morning.
⇒ Other robots move skillfully. ⇒ Let's run!
⇒ The accident happened yesterday. ⇒ The bus has arrived.

لاحظ: بعض الأفعال قد تكون متعدية أو لازمة حسب المعنى

The train left.

غير متعدي (غادر)

Ahmed left some money for his brother.

متعدّي (ترك)

- The class brought their teacher some flowers. (for)

⇒ *The class brought some flowers for their teacher*

- Heba gave her sister a present. (to her)

⇒ *Heba gave a present to her sister*

- Did you buy me that smart phone? (for me)

⇒ *Did you buy that smart phone for me?*

- He sent me a book. (to me)

⇒ *He sent a book to me*

- Ahmed gave me a present. (A present) / (to)

⇒ *A present was given to me.*

⇒ *Ahmed gave a present to me*

Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. My father bought me a smartphone. (for me)

2. Grandmother baked him a cake. (for)

3. Ahmed gave me a present. (to)

4. Maha gave her sister a pen. (to)

5. The sons bought their mother a present on her birthday. (for)

6. My cousin sent me an email yesterday. (to)
9. The children brought their mother some flowers. (for)
10. The owner sold the house to Ahmed. (sold Ahmed)
11. Grandmother baked him a cake (for)
12. I sent the manager the final report (The final report)
13. Did you buy me that phone? (for me)
14. Mona offered Hala a cup of tea (to)
15. Maya gave her sister a pen. (to)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 14- Eman sent an email
a. For me b. mine c. to me d. me
- 15- I gave the message.
a. for my sister b. my sister c. hers d. to my sister
- 16- I gave the pen he needed.
a. my friend b. for my friend c. to my friend d. his
- 17- Here's Mona's book. Please can you give it.....?
a. To her b. for her c. her d. hers
- 18- Robots entertain in hospitals.
a. for children b. to children c. children d. their
- 19- Tourist information centres give mapsfor free.
a. to tourists b. tourists c. for tourists d. of tourists
- 20- I offered a drink.....
a. the guest b. for the guest c. him d. to the guest
- 21- They asked a difficult question.
a. she b. her c. hers d. to her
- 22- I bought a mobile phone
a. my brother b. for my brother c. to my brother d. my brother's
- 23- Here is Ali's book. - Can you?
a. give it him b. give it for him c. give him it d. give it to him
- 24- Have you sent the new book?
a. she b. her c. for her d. to her
- 25- Have you listened to the news? - Yes, I listened to
a. its b. their c. them d. it
- 26- The teacher rewarded the boys. He rewarded well
a. theirs b. their c. them d. him

Key Vocabulary

Lessons 3&4

oar	مجداف للمركب	steam	بخار
sail	يبجر - شراع	steam ship	باخرة
transport	نقل	powerful	قوي
transport ships	سفن نقل	winner	فائز
early boats	قوارب بدائية	scientific research	البحث العلمي
rope	حبل	papyrus	نبات البردي
goods	بضائع	emphasise	يؤكد
Science competition	مسابقة العلوم	remind	يذكر

Extra Vocabulary

design	يصمم / تصميم	building boats	بناء قوارب
essential	ضروري - أساسي	in around	في حوالي
wooden	خشبي	large	ضخم - واسع
ancient Egypt	مصر الفرعونية	century	قرن
reason	سبب	guest	ضيف
tie	يربط	mistake	خطأ
expert at	خبير في	map	خريطة
starve	يموت جوعاً	sun cream	كريم للشمس
oil	زيت - بترول خام	during	أثناء
experiment	تجربة علمية	seat	مقعد
across	عبر	wheel	عجلة
The twentieth century	القرن العشرين	fantastic	رائع
calendar	نتيجة - تقويم	several+جمع	العديد من
present	يعرض - هدية - مضارع	flood	فيضان - يفيض
sell goods	يبيع البضائع	better place	مكان أفضل
plant crops	محاصيل نباتية	season	موسم
flood	فيضان	famous	مشهور
main idea	فكرة أساسية - رئيسية	notebook	كراسه - دفتر
passage	ممر - قطعة	beautifully	بطريقة جميلة
dust	تراب	chemist	كيميائي / صيدلي
dirt	قذارة	chemistry	كيمياء
environment	بيئة	patient	مريض / صبور
necessary	ضروري	carefully	بحرص
early 1800s	بداية القرن التاسع عشر	science museum	متحف علوم
research	يقوم بعمل بحث/بحث علمي	grammar rules	قواعد لغوية

Confusing Words

research بحث علمي	test إختبار	boat قارب	role دور	a long + اسم شيء طويل
search بحث/يبحث	taste يتذوق	ship سفينة	rule قاعدة	along بطول/بمحاذاة

Conjugations of irregular verbs:

cut يقطع	cut	cut	leave يغادر	left	left
run يجري	ran	run	blow تهب	blew	blown
make يصنع	made	made	sell يبيع	sold	sold
begin يبدأ	began	begun	drive يقود	drove	driven
learn يتعلم	learnt	learnt	learn يتعلم	learned	learned

Prepositions & Expressions

do research	يقوم بعمل بحث	travel across the sea	يسافر عبر البحر
do an experiment	يقوم بتجربة علمية	in around 4000 BCE	في حوالي ٤٠٠٠ قبل الميلاد
have a problem with	لديه مشكلة في	pick up dust	يزيل التراب
work on	يعمل علي حل	Sell goods	يبيع البضائع
an expert at/in/on	خبير في..	in some way	بطريقة ما
tie together with	يربط سويا بـ	Enter a competition	يدخل مسابقة
move forward	تحرك للأمام	Build/make boats	يبني/يصنع قارب
idea for	فكرة لـ	begin to+ inf	يبدأ أن..
make..... from	يصنع من	most of ...	غالبية
for this reason	لهذا السبب	for sure	للتأكيد
along the river	بطول النهر/بمحاذاة	remember to + inf.	يتذكر أن
prize for	جائزة لـ	famous for	مشهور بـ

Definitions

Oars مجاديف	A long pole used for rowing يجدف a boat.
Sails شراع	A large piece of strong cloth fixed on a boat to make the wind push the boat.
Steam بخار	The gas produced when water is boiled.
Personal شخصي	For you or belonging to you.

Language Notes

إنه..... إنه مصدر + to مفعول + صفة + It's

- ⇒ It's important for you to study hard.
- ⇒ It is difficult to think of something to invent.

لكي مصدر + to/in order

- ⇒ They also invented the first sail in order to move faster up the river.

مصدر + can/could + فاعل so that

- ⇒ The Egyptians invented the calendar so that they could plant their crops at the right time.

يبحث عن شيء أو شخص / بحث search

- ⇒ I searched for the my wallet but I didn't find it.

يبحث علميا / بحث علمي research

- ⇒ I did some research into the history of Egypt

يعمل لدي شخص / شركة work for

- ⇒ He works for an oil company.

يعمل مع / يتعامل مع work with

- ⇒ Dr Magdy worked with top surgeons.

يحسب / يحل work out

- ⇒ Can you work out this sum?

يحسن / يطور / يصلح work on

- ⇒ Doctors work on a cure for cancer.

Tapescript



Teacher : So, Let's talk about the science competition. You must remember how important it is for you to enter. You learned so much about scientific research.

Student : I have got a lot of ideas of some inventions already.

Teacher : That is very good. But don't forget that the idea is the easiest part of a project. One you got an idea, you have to think about the design, then you have to do several experiments and test them to see if they work.

Student : What kind of ideas are you looking for in the competition?

Teacher : It is necessary for you to be something different, do some research and find out if your idea is completely new.

Student : It is difficult to think of something to invent.

Teacher : It can be difficult at first I agree. I agree, it might be easier to think of a problem that you want to solve. First, it is important to remember to look on something that you are really interested in and don't forget there is a prize. The winners will visit the science museum where they will present their designs to people who work there.

Reading

The Invention of Ships and Sails

In ancient Egypt, like today, most of our important cities were built along the Nile. For this reason, people have used the river for transport for many years. The people also became experts at building boats.

Early boats

In around 4000BCE, the ancient Egyptians made small boats from Papyrus. They used Oars to move them forwards.

Wooden boats and Sails

Later, they used wood tied together with ropes to build boats. They also invented the first sail in order to move faster up the river when the wind blow.

Transport ships

* In around 2500 BCE, people began to build larger and stronger boats. Ships could travel across the sea to sell goods in other countries.

Steam and oil

* Ships needed the wind until the early 1800s, when the first steamships began to cross the seas.

* In the twentieth century, oil was used to take powerful ships around the world.

The ancient Egyptian year had three seasons. It's essential to remember that calendars were very important in ancient Egypt. Farmers needed to know when to plant crops. In addition, they needed to know when the Nile was going to flood. I want to emphasise how important food was at this time. Don't forget that many people would starve if the crops did not grow. The Egyptians invented the calendar so that they could plant their crops at the right time. The calendar had twelve months of thirty days, which is 360 days a year. They also had five holidays!

James Dyson was born in 1947. In the 1960s, Dyson studied how to design things at a university in London. In the 1970s, Dyson began to invent machines to help people in the house.

His most famous invention is a new kind of vacuum cleaner. It was different because it did not need bags to pick up the dust. Dyson won many prizes for his invention. Since this time, Dyson has invented other things to make things easier for people and he has also written books about his work.

Language Functions

التأكيد على رأي / فكرة Emphasising a point

You must remember to + مصدر	You must remember to describe characters well.
You must remember that + جملة	You must remember that grammar rules are important.
Don't forget to + مصدر	Don't forget to revise well for the exam.
Don't forget that + جملة	Don't forget that here is a prize.
It is important/ necessary to + مصدر	It is important for you to study hard.

- You want to remind your mother to buy you a book.
 - ⇒ Don't forget to buy me a book.
 - ⇒ You must remember to buy me a book.
- Ask your sister not to forget to switch off the lights before sleeping.
 - ⇒ Don't forget to switch off the lights before sleeping.
- Remind your brother to write his homework.
 - ⇒ You must remember to write your homework.
 - ⇒ It's important to write your homework.
 - ⇒ Don't forget to write your homework.

- You want to emphasise that studying hard is necessary.
 - ⇒ You must remember that studying hard is necessary.
 - ⇒ Don't forget that studying hard is necessary.

Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1- Remind your brother to do his homework.

.....

2- You want to remind your father to buy you a mobile.

.....

3- You ask a friend to name two Egyptians who won the Nobel prize.

.....

4- You are in a busy street with your younger brother. You advise him not to walk too close to the road.

.....

5- A friend asks you for the best way to revise before the test .

.....

6- Your brother will go on a picnic. Remind him to pack his bags.

.....

7- Your classmate doesn't correct his mistakes. Emphasize that point

.....

8- Remind your father to buy you a present on your birthday.

.....

9- You are emphasizing the importance of remembering friends' birthdays.

.....

10- You want to remind your father to buy you a mobile.

.....

11- You ask a friend to name two Egyptians who won the Nobel prize.

.....

Finish the following dialogue:

Salem and Omar are talking outside a classroom in their school.

Salem : Who is our science teacher talking to in the classroom?

Omar : She is talking to the scientist who is giving us a talk next week.

Salem : Oh, yes, I forgot.

Omar : (1)It's essential.

Salem : Yes, you're right, it is very important. (2)?

Omar : (3)..... I think he's going to talk about useful robots.

Salem : That's a very interesting topic. (4)?

Omar : Maybe he'll bring a robot with him!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- Egyptians used the Nile togoods.
a. make b. transport c. take d. give
- 2- The ancient Egyptians made small boats from for transporting goods.
a. paper b. ropes c. oars d. papyrus
- 3- Ancient Egyptians used to move boats forward.
a. oars b. steamships c. wheels d. inventions
- 4- It's better to stay than make a mistake.
a. talk b. speak c. speech d. silent
- 5- In the twentieth, oil was used to take powerful ships around the world.
a. century b. month c. year d. decade
- 6- The got into the boat and used the oar strongly.
a. driver b. pilot c. sailor d. rider
- 7- The film was; I really enjoyed it much.
a. unknown b. terrible c. fantastic d. boring
- 8- People the sail in order to move boats faster.
a. invented b. discovered c. refused d. did
- 9- Dr musharfa was anin maths
a. experience b. experiment c. expert d. export
- 10- many people would.....if the crops didn't grow.
a. start b. starve c. stir d. export
- 11- There was no wind, so they used the..... to take the boat to the island.
a. ropes b. stones c. poles d. oars
- 12- What's the name of the.....who made the first radio?
a. visitor b. worker c. inventor d. discoverer
- 13- When water boils, we can see.....
a. steel b. cloud c. smoke d. steam
- 14- The ancient Egyptians made small boats from for transporting goods.
a. paper b. ropes c. oars d. papyrus
- 15- Ancient Egyptians used to move boats forward.
a. oars b. steamships c. cars d. inventions
- 16- Egyptians used the Nile togoods.
a. make b. transport c. take d. give
- 17- steamships and powerful ships didn't need the.....
a. oil b. steam c. wind d. petrol

Revision B**The Nobel prizes**

Alfred Nobel was born in 1833. He was a chemist and a great inventor. When he was a young child, Alfred couldn't go to school for many years because his parents didn't have enough money. Later, he was able to study because his father found a good job. Alfred was a very intelligent person. He could speak many languages, such as English, French and German. He also liked to read scientific books and to write stories. When he died in 1896, he left a lot of money so that people

could start the Nobel Prizes. These are awards for people's achievements. It must be very rewarding to win these prizes. They are for people from all over the world who have had a great level of success in medicine, science and writing. The winners get both a small trophy and money. There is also an award for people who have worked to make the world a better place. To remember

Alfred Nobel, the awards are given on December 10th, which is the day he died. Naguib Mahfouz was an Egyptian writer who won the 1988 Nobel Prize for writing. He wrote 34 novels and more than 300 short stories. Another Egyptian, Ahmed Zewail, won a Nobel Prize for chemistry in 1999.



Adam : Hi, Faris. What are you doing?

Faris : I'm reading about Dr Ali Mostafa Musharafa. there might be a question about him in my maths lesson next week.

Adam : What does it say?

Faris : Dr Ali Mostafa Musharafa was able to work out some really difficult problems in maths and science, Furthermore, there is laboratory that has his name at Cairo University. He worked at the university for many years.

Adam : Yes, I've heard about him. He did very well at school.'

Faris : Did he?

Adam : Yes, at that time he was the youngest person to pass exams at his school. He was only sixteen.

Faris : That's interesting. It says here that he went to university in England. He became the first Egyptian to become a doctor of science. When he was in London, he was also able to write articles for important science magazines.

Adam : What did he do after that?

Faris : He became a professor of mathematics at Cairo University,

Adam : That's a great achievement. Do you think that he was a genius?

Faris : I don't know, but I am sure he was very intelligent.

Practice Test 2a**1. Finish the following dialogue:**

Adam and Faris are talking about Dr Alii Moustafa Musharrafa.

Adam : Hi, Faris. What are you doing ?

Faris : I'm reading about Dr Ali Moustafa Musharrafa.

Adam : (1)

Faris : Dr Musharrafa was able to work out some really difficult problems in maths and science.

Adam : (2) What else does the article say ?

Faris : It says here that he was the first Egyptian to become a doctor of science.

Adam : That's a great achievement! (3)

Faris : I'm not sure but he was definitely really smart.

Adam : (4)

Faris : I agree. We should do our best to be like him.

2. Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. Your mother asks you how you did on your English exam. Express certainty.

.....

2. Your friend asks you if you met the writer who visited your school last week. This was not possible because you were ill.

.....

3. You are in a busy street with your younger brother. You advise him not to walk too close to the road.

.....

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

There have been hotels for hundreds of years, but they might be different in the future. Usually there are friendly people who write your name and address, carry your bags to your room and give you breakfast in the morning. In Japan, there is a hotel where there are no people working at all: all the work there is done by robots. When you first arrive at the hotel to check in, a robot tells you what to do: you should enter information about yourself on a computer. The robot is able to communicate in lots of different languages. You don't need a key for your room because a computer in the door will recognise you. There is even a robot in each room who is able to turn lights on and off and answer simple questions!

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why are there no people working in this hotel ?

.....

2. Why don't you need a key to your room in this hotel ?

.....

3. What problems do you think you might have in a hotel like this ?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. "check in" means
- a. report that you have arrived b. sleep c. wake up d. park your car**
5. The underlined word "there" refers to
- a. the hotel b. Japan c. the robot d. the future**

C. The Reader**A. Match column A with column B:**

1. John Manly	a. saved Squire Gordon from the broken bridge.
2. Black Beauty	b. hit the horses hard.
3. Ginger	c. began to respect Squire Gordon.
4. Merrylegs	d. was Squire Gordon's helper.
	e. wanted to teach the boys a lesson about horses.

B. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think that John was able to take the horses from the burning stables?
.....
2. Why do you think that moving horses when there is a fire is very hard?
.....

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. STEM schools students follow the technology.
a. latest b. late c. later d. least
2. this course will help you your skills.
a. prove b. rempve c. improve d. move
3. The maths homework was very difficult. Were you do it?
a. could b. able to c. able d. can
4. It is to take your passport when you go to another country.
a. easy b. essential c. enjoyable d. enormous
5. Ola is always She will do very well in her exams.
a. noisy b. lazy c. hard-working d. exhausted
6. There are eight that go around the sun.
a. plants b. sails c. planets d. stars

6. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. I couldn't find the pen that you lost. **(able)**
.....
2. Perhaps I'll wear a jacket today. I'm not sure. **(might)**
.....
3. Adel might visit us tomorrow. **(I'm not sure)**
.....

7. Write a paragraph of about 110 words on:

a form of technology that is most useful to you

Practice Test 2B**1- Finish the following dialogue:**

Salem and Omar are talking outside a classroom in their school.

Salem : Who is our science teacher talking to in the classroom ?

Omar : She is talking to the scientist who is giving us a talk next week.

Salem : Oh, yes, I forgot.

Omar : (1)..... It's essential.

Salem : Yes, you're right, it is very important. (2)..... ?

Omar : (3)..... I think he's going to talk about useful robots.

Salem : That's a very interesting topic. (4)..... ?

Omar : Maybe he'll bring a robot with him!

2. Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. A friend says that Athens is bigger than London. You don't think this is correct.

.....

2. Your friend thinks he saw a cat in the hotel. You are certain that cats aren't allowed in the hotel.

.....

3. A friend asks you for the best way to revise before the test.

.....

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

Many famous people were amazing when they were children. Mozart was able to play music when he was three and could write music when he was five. Judit Polgar is a great chess player. She was able to win chess games against some adults when she was twelve years old and she won chess competitions when she was fifteen. Karl Benz went to university to study to be an engineer when he was fifteen and he later invented the car. And the great scientist Marie Curie taught herself to read Russian and French when she was four. She could also help her older brothers and sisters with their maths homework! However, some people who do amazing things when they are children become ordinary adults: not all of them are able to become famous.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Karl Benz go to university ?

.....

2. Who taught Marie Curie to read Russian and French ?

.....

3. Why do you think that many amazing children are not able to become famous when they grow up ?

.....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The word "ordinary" means

a. not helpful

b. amazing

c. special

d. not special

5. The underlined word "they" refers to

a. Mozart and Polgar

b. some adults

c. scientists

d. Benz and Curie

C. The Reader**4. a. Match column A with column B:**

1. Squire Gordon's friends	a. didn't listen to Black Beauty when he called out.
2. The rider in the stable	b. walked out of the stable when Black Beauty called her.
3. Ginger	c. smoked a cigarette and caused a fire.
4. Mrs Gordon	d. were amazed because John saved the horses.
	e. went with Squire Gordon to visit some friends.

b. Answer the following questions:

4. Why do you think that the horses wanted to stay in the stables although there was a fire ?

.....

5. What do you think would happen if Black Beauty crossed the bridge?

.....

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. how quickly can you work out the answers to these maths ?
a. medals b. prizes c. awards d. sums
2. Eman sent an email.
a. for me b. me c. mine d. to me
3. what's the name of the Who made the first radio?
a. inventor b. discover c. explorer d. worker
4. Use the..... cleaner to clean the kitchen floor.
a. lawn b. mower c. vacuum d. oar
5. I'd like to..... you to my house this Saturday.
a. invent b. interview c. interrupt d. invite
6. That man has a very loud..... I can hear him from across the road!
a. voice b. face c. graph d. ability

6. Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets:

1. I know that it is my pen. It is the only one that is red. **(must)**

2. Mona wasn't able to finish the project yesterday. **(could)**

3. Hassan is interested in reading. He also writes short stories. **(In addition)**

7. Write an email of about 110 words:

To your teacher explaining why you would like to go to a STEM school

Unit 7 All about Sports

Key Vocabulary

Lessons 1&2

court	ملعب تنس/سلة	measure	يقيس - يحسب
indoor courts	ملاعب داخلية/ملاعب مغطاه	score	يحرز يسجل
racket	مضرب	wooden racket	مضرب خشبي
rahat (hands)	راحة اليدين	referee	حكم
pole	عارضة - عمود-وتد	trophy	كأس

Extra Vocabulary

basketball	كرة السلة	tie	يربط
tennis	التنس	all about	كل شيء عن
indoor	داخل البيت - داخلي	believe	يعتقد - يؤمن بـ
similar to	مشابه لـ	Egyptian sport	رياضة مصرية
rocket	صاروخ	twelfth century	القرن الثاني عشر
wool	صوف	as many as	أكثر عدد ممكن من
rubber	مطاط	middle	منتصف
leather	جلد مدبوغ للصناعة	practise	يمارس - يتمرن
long bits	قطع طويلة	practice	تدريب - ممارسة
weather	طقس - جو (فترة قصيرة)	each end	كل نهاية
climate	المناخ (فترة طويلة)	bottom	قاع
P.E. teacher	مدرس تربية رياضية	revise	يراجع
P.E.(physical education)	التربية الرياضية	revision	مراجعته
tent	خيمة	stadium	إستاد
filled	مملوء	in the past	في الماضي
horse hair	شعر الخيل	law	قانون
throw	يرمي	obligation	إلزام
popular	محبوب	grab	يُمسِك
weigh	يزن	Canadian	كندي
weight	وزن		

Units of Measurements

gram	جرام	centimetre	سنتيمتر
kilogram	كيلو جرام (ألف جرام)	metre	متر (١٠٠ سنتيمتر)
ton	طن (الف كيلو)	kilometre	كيلو متر (١٠٠٠ سنتيمتر)

Confusing Words

wool	صوف	century	قرن	history	تاريخ	weight	يزن	leather	جلد مدبوغ
wall	حائط	country	دولة	date	تاريخ اليوم	wait	ينتظر	skin	جلد البشرة

Opposites

inside	بالداخل	outside	بالخارج
indoor	داخلي/في الداخل	outdoor	خارجي / في الخارج
score	يحرز هدف	miss	يخطيء/يفقد (هدف)

Conjugations of irregular verbs:

have to	يجب أن	had to	had to	do	يفعل	did	done
hit	يضرب	hit	hit	cut	يقطع / يقص	cut	cut
make	يصنع	made	made	throw	يرمي	threw	thrown
think	يعتقد - يفكر	thought	thought	get up	يستيقظ	got up	got up

Prepositions & Expressions

do/play sports	يمارس رياضة	similar to	مشابه لـ
do revision	يراجع	at each end	في كل طرف/نهاية
do computer studies	يدرس الحاسب الآلي	It's against the law	إنه ضد القانون
do P.E.	يمارس التربية الرياضية	made from	صنع من (مادة تتغير)
hold up a tent	ينصب خيمة	made of	صنع من (مادة لا تتغير)
by 1500	بحلول ١٥٠٠	in those days	في تلك الأيام
hit the ball with	يضرب الكرة بـ	filled with	مملوء تـ
take ...out	يُخرج ... من ...	cut off	يقطع - يفصل
tie to	يربط في	it's fun for + v.ing	من المبهج أن..
on time	في الوقت المحدد	over the years	بمرور السنين
in time	في الوقت المناسب	wait for	ينتظر شخص/شيء

Definitions

Poles	اعمدة	long bits of metal or wood
Score	يحرز/يسجل	what you need to do to win in some sports games
Court	ملعب/فناء	the place where a tennis or basketball match is played
Indoor	داخلي	inside a building

Language Notes

جدا لدرجة لا يمكن.... المصدر + to + صفة + too

⇒ The coffee was too hot to drink.

لنقصد فئة من الناس صفة + the

⇒ the rich الأغنياء the old كبار السن the French الفرنسيين

داخلي (صفة) + اسم + indoor

⇒ basketball is played at indoor courts.

بالداخل (ظرف) + indoors

⇒ it's raining so we stay indoors.

خارجي (صفة) + اسم + outdoor

⇒ Football is an outdoor sport.

بالخارج (ظرف) + outdoors

⇒ I don't like playing outdoors.

Reading

Some experts believe that tennis was first an Egyptian sport, because the word racket is very similar to the Arabic word rahat (hands). Other people believe that it was invented by the French in the eleventh or twelfth century.

By the thirteenth century, there were as many as 1,800 indoor courts, so people didn't have to wait for good weather in order to play. In those days, players had to hit the ball with their hands. By 1500, the game was played with a wooden racket.

The very first tennis balls were made from leather filled with horse hair or wool. Today, tennis balls are rubber and have to measure 6.54-7.3 centimetres across the middle and weigh 56-59.49 grams.

Basketball was invented in 1891 by a Canadian P.E teacher, James Naismith. In that year, he thought:

"I must find a new sport for my students to play in winter, because it's too cold to play outside," The new game could be played inside in any weather.

James Naismith tied two baskets to poles at each end of the court. A player had to throw the ball into the basket in order to score. At first before the bottoms of the baskets were cut off, a player had to take the ball out of the basket after he or she scored. The game is now very popular, although you must practise every day to be good at it.

Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d

- 1- Long ago, tennis players didn't have to wear special shoes on tennis
- a. pool b. theatre c. court d. park*
- 2- Which of the following can you use to hold up a tent ?
- a. poles b. costumes c. signs d. flutes*
- 3- In games like tennis, you use a.....to hit the ball
- a. rocket b. racket c. jacket d. pocket*
- 4- We must use..... to hold up a tent.
- a. poles b. flutes c. pools d. flats*
- 5- In basketball, players have to.....the ball into the basket.
- a. kick b. score c. hold d. throw*
- 6- You need to to win a sports game.
- a. kick b. score c. hold d. grab*
- 7- A tennis ball has to56.59.49 grams.
- a. weigh b. count c. hit d. add*
- 8- A.....is a place where you play tennis or basketball.
- a. theatre b. museum c. court d. cinema*
- 9- Hassan,the glass with water, please.
- a. eel b. full c. fill d. fall*
- 10- Places where a tennis or basketball match is played are called
- a. poofs b. courts c. gardens d. fields*
- 11- are tong bits of metal or wood to which you can tie things.
- a. Poofs b. Poles c. Bowls d. Pills*
- 12- Today, tennis balls have to 56 - 59.4 grams.
- a. win b. weigh c. carry d. dive*
- 13- You should more revision in the week before the exam.
- a. do b. try c. take d. go*
- 14- In basketball, players have to the ball into the basket.
- a. kick b. score c. throw d. join*

الضرورة والإلزام Necessity and obligation

الضرورة في المضارع Present Necessity

مصدر + have/has to + فاعل

للتعبير عن قاعدة او قانون او اشياء مفروضة علينا ولا خيار لنا فيها

- We have to go to school on time
- She has to get a passport to travel to London.
- We have to go to school five days a week.
- Today, tennis balls have to weigh 56-59.49 grams.

عند تكوين السؤال ب Yes / No

Do/Does + فاعل + have to+ inf?

Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

Do you have to get up at seven o'clock?

Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

Does she have to eat breakfast?

Yes, she does. / No, she doesn't.

عند تكوين السؤال ب أداة استفهام

Wh + do/does + فاعل + have to+ inf?

فاعل + have /has to + inf

When do you have to finish your homework?

I have to finish mt homework at 5 o'clock.

يجب أن must + inf + فاعل

تستخدم must للتعبير عن نصيحة قوية

- You must see a doctor. You've been ill for a week
- You must wash your hand before you eat.
- I must find a new sport for my students to play in winter

تستخدم must للتعبير عن إلزام داخلي غير مفروض علينا

- We must buy souvenirs for our friends.
- I must visit my uncle more often.

عند تكوين السؤال ب Yes / No

Must+ فاعل + inf ?

Yes, I must. / No, I mustn't.

Must you see a doctor?

Yes, I must. / No, I mustn't.

عند تكوين السؤال ب أداة استفهام

Wh + must + فاعل + inf?

فاعل + must+ inf

When must you leave home to go to school?

I must leave home to go to school in the morning?

فاعل + must / have to / has to+ inf. = It is necessary (for مفعول) to + inf.

- We have to go to school on time. (necessary)

⇒ It is necessary for us to go to school on time.

الضرورة في الماضي Past Necessity

كان يجب أن had to + inf. + فاعل

تستخدم للتعبير عن الضرورة بفعل شيء في الماضي، وبالتالي تم التنفيذ.

I couldn't go to the park yesterday because I had to finish my homework.

In those days, players had to hit the ball with their hands

عند تكوين السؤال ب Yes / No

Did + فاعل + have to + inf ?

Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

Did you have to clean your rrom?

Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

lack of Present Necessity نقص الضرورة في المضارع

تعبّر عن عدم الضرورة لفعل شيء في المضارع (لا داعي لفعل الشيء ويمكن أن تفعله إذا أردت)

I , You , We , They ➡ don't have to + inf. لا يجب ان
He , She , It ➡ doesn't have to+ inf.

⇒ She doesn't have to hurry. She isn't late for school.

⇒ I don't have to do my homework today.

lack of Past Necessity نقص الضرورة في الماضي

تعبّر عن عدم الضرورة لفعل شيء في الماضي (شيء لم يكن مهم ولذلك لم أفعله).

لم يك مهم أن didn't have to + inf. + فاعل

⇒ I didn't have to hurry as I was early.

⇒ We didn't have to do computer studies when we were at primary school.

تستخدم mustn't للتعبير النهي/التحريم (لأنه ضد القانون) وإذا حدث الفعل يكون هناك ضرر

⇒ He mustn't park here. It's against the law.

⇒ You mustn't smoke at the hospital.

فاعل + must / have to / has to + inf. It is necessary (for مفعول) to + inf.	We have to go to school on time. It is necessary for us to go to school on time.
فاعل + had to + inf. It was necessary for مفعول + to + inf.	She had to take a taxi. It was necessary for her to take a taxi.
فاعل + don't/doesn't have to + inf. It isn't necessary (for + مفعول) + to + inf. It is unnecessary (for + مفعول) + to + inf.	He doesn't have to buy a gift. It isn't necessary for him to buy a gift. It was unnecessary for him to buy a gift.
فاعل + didn't have to + inf. It wasn't necessary (for + مفعول) to + inf. It was unnecessary (for + مفعول) to + inf.	I didn't have to wear a jacket. It wasn't necessary to wear a jacket. It was unnecessary to wear a jacket.
مصدر + mustn't + فاعل It isn't not allowed to غير مسموح It's forbidden to ممنوع It's against the law to + مصدر ضد القانون	You mustn't park here. It isn't not allowed to park. It's forbidden to park here. It's against the law to park here.

Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets:

1- It is not necessary to get up early tomorrow. It's a holiday. **(have to)**

2- It's necessary to do your homework regularly. **(have to)**

3- It's forbidden to park here. **(must)**

- 4- There's a sign says "No smoking". (mustn't)
- 5- Did you have to be kind to her? (Was it)
- 6- It was necessary for him to run fast. (had)
- 7- It is not allowed to park your car here. (mustn't)
- 8- It isn't necessary for Basem to buy me the newspaper. (doesn't)
- 9- It wasn't necessary to wear a jacket. It wasn't so cold. (have to)
- 10- It's necessary to get a passport to go to London. (have to)
- 11- It is necessary to run to catch my train. (have to)
- 12- It is necessary for students to go to school on time. (have to)
- 13- It's against the law to drive a car without a license. (mustn't)
- 14- You don't have to pay to go into the museum. (necessary)
- 15- He wants to park here but it's against the law. (mustn't)
- 16- You don't have to get up early. It's a holiday. (necessary)
- 17- I had to buy another mobile phone. (necessary)
- 18- Parking here is against the law. (mustn't)

choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d

- 15- I couldn't go to the park yesterday because I to finish my homework.
a. have b. could c. mustn't d. had
- 16- How long did you..... wait till the bus arrived?
a. has to b. have to c. must d. have
- 17- I couldn't go to the park yesterday because I to finish my homework
a. have b. could c. mustn't d. Had
- 18- What did you do before you came to school this morning?
a. had to b. have to c. must d. have
- 19- 4. You.....do that. it's against the law.
a. needn't b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. don't have to

- 20- Hewash his hands before he eats.
a. must b. mustn't c. have to d. hasn't
- 21- Sheget a passport to travel to London.
a. have to b. mustn't c. has to d. doesn't have to
- 22- She hurry. She isn't late for school.
a. should b. has to c. don't have to d. doesn't have to
- 23- In those days, playershit the ball with their hands.
a. has to b. had to c. must d. have to
- 24- We to do computer studies when we were at primary school.
a. mustn't b. didn't have c. don't have d. shouldn't
- 25- Did you.....do P.E when you were at school?
a. has to b. had to c. must d. have to
- 26- Yousee a doctor. You've been ill for a week.
a. has to b. need c. must d. have to
- 27- Long ago, tennis players wear special shoes on tennis court.
a. mustn't b. shouldn't c. don't have to d. didn't have to
- 28- Halago to hospital yesterday as she was ill.
a. has to b. had to c. must d. have to
- 29- You take photos here. It's forbidden.
a. must b. mustn't c. don't have to d. have to
- 30- We go to school on time.
a. has to b. mustn't c. don't have to d. have to
- 31- Iremember to turn off the lights before I go to bed.
a. must b. have to c. has to d. had to

Key Vocabulary

Lessons 3&4

referee	حكم	trophy	كأس
opponent	منافس - خصم	compete	ينافس
spectator	مشاهد - متفرج	competition	منافسة
achievement	إنجاز	winner	فائز
compete	ينافس	stadium	استاد
athlete	لاعب ألعاب قوي	The final	النهائي
athletics	ألعاب قوي	congratulate	يهنئ
encourage	يشجع	good sport!	ذو روح رياضية
champion	بطل رياضي	team	فريق
championship	بطولة	match	مباراة
light	يشعل / مصباح / خفيف الوزن	special shoes	أحذية خاصة
change	يغير / تغيير	runner	عداء
no longer	لم يعد	rules	قواعد

Important Vocabulary

Lessons 3&4

the Olympic Games	الالعاب الاولمبية	However, جملة = but	ولكن / مع ذلك
the olympics	الأولمبياد	Although	على الرغم من
Greece	اليونان	leaves	اوراق الشجر
Greek	يوناني	yell	يهتف - يصيح
sports event	حدث رياضي	event	حدث
yell unkind words	يتفوه بكلمات قاسية	side	جانب
break	فسحة / يكسر	horse riding	ركوب الخيل
apologise	يعتذر	accurately	بدقة
injured leg	رجل مجروحه	wear a helmet	يرتدي خوذة
fit	لائق بدنيا	the other team	الفريق الأخر
volleyball	كرة طائرة	self-respect	احترام الذات
Speed-ball	كرة السرعة	equipment	معدات
hold	يعقد/يقيم	net	شبكة
injured	مجروح	bones	عظام
completely different	مختلف تماما	similar meaning	معنى مشابه
try hard	يحاول جاهدا	contrast	تضاد
reason	سبب	dictionary	قاموس
judo	رياضة الجودو	opposite	مقابل - مضاد
lamp	لمبة	burning	يحترق
really	حقيقي	not dark	ليس مظلم

Confusing Words

between	بين إثنين	expert	خبير	event	حدث هام	list	قائمة أسماء/أشياء
among	بين أكثر من إثنين	export	يصدر	accident	حادثة	menu	قائمة طعام

Opposites

turn on	يشغل / يشعل	turn off	يطفى	light	خفيف	heavy	ثقيل
light	فاتح	dark	غامق	win	يفوز	lose	يخسر

Conjugations of irregular verbs:

burn	يحرق / يشعل	burned	burned	fly	يطير	flew	flown
burn	يحرق / يشعل	burnt	burnt	wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
win	يفوز	won	won	hurt	يؤلم	hurt	hurt
Lose	يخسر	lost	lost	say	يقول	said	said

Prepositions & Expressions

expert on/in/at	خبير في	the list keeps changing	القائمة دائما تتغير
compete for their country	ينافس من اجل بلده	win a self-respect	يفوز باحترام الذات
held the olympic games	يقوم الألعاب الأولمبية	did something wrong	يفعل شيء خطأ
win a medal for	يفوز بميدالية	agree with	يتفق مع شخص /فكرة
apologise for	يعتذر عن	do something wrong	يفعل شيء خاطيء
ask for	يطلب	lose a match	يخسر مباراة
(be) a good sport	ذو روح رياضية عالية	at all	علي الإطلاق
in the final of	في المباراة النهائية لـ	part of	جزء من
countries holding the games	الدول المنظمة للألعاب	look up	يبحث عن كلمة في قاموس

Definitions

Athletes	رياضي	Someone who is good at sports
Opponent	خصم	Someone who tries to defeat another person in a game
Referee	حكم	Someone who makes sure that the rules are followed in a game
Spectators	مشاهد	People who are watching a match or a game
Trophy	كأس	A prize for winning a competition or a race. (a silver cup)

Language Notes

congratulate + مفعول + on+ (v ing/ noun) يهنئ على

⇒ I congratulated heba on her success.

⇒ I cogratulated her on geeting high marks

How + صفة + ؟ كم مقدار.....

⇒ How hard is it for today's athletes?

⇒ How different were the ancient Greek stadiums?

**Professor Younis is an expert on the history of the Olympic Games.**

Boy : When were the first Olympic Games held?

Professor : The first Olympic Games were held in Greece in 776 BCE so, it is a very old competition.

Boy : Have the games changed a lot since then?

Professor : Oh ! yes, There have been many changes. In the ancient Greek Olympics, there were between seven and nine sports. They are completely different now. Some sports are no longer part of the modern games.

Boy : How many sports are part of the games now?

Professor : Well, The list keeps changing, but in 2016, there were forty- one sports. Another area where there have been big changes is in the stadiums, they become huge and very modern. Furthermore, stadiums all have news technology. So, their achievements can be managed more accurately.

Boy : How different were the ancient Greek stadiums?

Professor : Ancient Greek stadiums were not very comfortable and there wasn't even fresh water for the spectators. These days, spectators from all over the world come and watch events, but in ancient Greece only Greek spectators could watch the games.

Boy : How hard is it for today's athletes?

Professor : They work very hard. In the past, athletes only used to practise hard for about ten months before the games. These days they must work hard for years before the games.

Boy : What about the prizes the athletes win? That hasn't changed, has it?

Professor : Yes, it has. Today the athletes win medals for first, second or third place. This is very different from the past when winners were given only leaves to wear on their heads.

Boy : How often were the games held in the past?

Professor : During ancient times, they were held every four years in the summer and always in the same place in Greece. However, today the Olympics are held in different countries every time. Although there have been changes, it is always a great achievement for athletes to compete for their countries at the Olympics that hasn't changed at all.

Reading

In 1984, the Egyptian Mohamed Ali Rashwan was in the final of the World judo Championship. His opponent was a Japanese man, Yasuhiro Yamashita. Before the game, Yasuhiro hurt his right leg, but Mohamed did not touch his injured leg, although this would have helped him win. He did not think this was kind. Mohamed lost the match, but he won his self-respect.

Volleyball

In this sport, you have a high net and a ball. Each team has between four and six players. You have to hit the ball to your opponent. The opponent has to hit the ball back to your side of the net. They can also hit the ball to players on their own team. Each team can hit the ball three times. Teams have to hit the ball with their hands or arms. The ball cannot touch the ground. A team scores when the opponent does not hit the ball back, or if the ball touches the ground on the opponent's side of the net.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- You should congratulate your when he wins the match.
a. spectator b. opponent c. inventor d. sailor
- 2- If you are the, you have to decide if something is right or wrong in a match.
a. spectator b. referee c. opponent d. athlete
- 3-go to stadiums to enjoy watching football matches there.
a. Soldiers b. Scientists c. Spectators d. Opponents
- 4- Who is your in a tennis competition?
a. spectator b. opposite c. opponent d. inventor
- 5- Ten thousand were at the football match yesterday.
a. referees b. teams c. Spectators d. Opponents
- 6- Hala's cousin is a very good She wants to compete in the next Olympic Games
a. athlete b. footballer c. referee d. Spectator
- 7- My friend got a for winning a race.
a. medal b. metal c. money d. juice
- 8- You should congratulate your when he wins the match.
a. spectator b. opponent c. inventor d. sailor
- 9- Please, tie these two baskets to the woodenfrom both sides.
a. poles b. bowls c. pools d. pills
- 10- Mariam got a for winning the sports competition.
a. trophy b. metal c. present d. degree
- 11- The..... stopped the game and told the basketball player to throw the ball again.
a. teacher b. tourist c. referee d. Spectator

12- When they went camping, they had to a fire.

a. fight

b. might

c. catch

d. light

13- the Olympic games are an important.....

a. event

b. accident

c. play

d. film

14- A.....is a place where you can watch sports events

a. farden

b. cinema

c. studio

d. stadium

Language Functions

Contrasting information معلومات متناقضة

Although / بالرغم من **However,** / لكن ومع ذلك = **but**

However, (ومع ذلك (وتوضع في بداية الجملة الثانية)

The Olympic Games were held in Greece only. However, today the Olympics are held in different countries.

but (وتوضع في وسط الجملتين) لكن

The Olympic Games were held in Greece only but today the Olympics are held in different countries.

He is clever but he can't answer these types of questions.

Although (بالرغم من (توضع في بداية الجملة الاولى)

Although the Olympic Games were held in Greece only. Today the Olympics are held in different countries.

نتيجة غير متوقعة عكس الجملة الأولى , جملة حقيقة + **Although**
نتيجة غير متوقعة عكس الجملة الأولى , **However,** جملة حقيقة

• He is tired. However, he studies a lot. (Although)

⇒ **Although he is tired , he studies a lot.**

• She wanted to bake a cake. She didn't have any eggs. (However)

⇒ **She wanted to bake a cake. However, she didn't have any eggs.**

• They got up early, but they didn't catch the bus. (Although)

⇒ **Although they get up early , they didn't catch the bus.**

1. He woke up early. However, he missed the bus. (Although)

2. It's sunny today, but it's not very hot (However)

3. Although watching too much TV is not good, I watch it a lot. (However)

4. Eman is still young. However, she can speak English and German. **(Although)**

5. It's sunny today, but it's not very hot. **(However)**

Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1- Although you lost the match, you congratulate you opponent.

2- Your friend came first in a competition.

3- Your brother is parking his car in a No parking place. You know it's against the law

4- You tell your friend that you're short but you like playing basketball.

5- You tell a friend that basketball is a popular sport but you like tennis.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It is an achievement to be an Olympic athlete.,it is really hard work
a. Furthermore b. However c. although d. in addition to
2. Basketball players need to be tall, some good players are short.
a. Furthermore b. but c. Although d. in addition
3.I really enjoy playing speed-ball, I don't have any time to practise it
a. Furthermore b. but c. Although d. in addition
4. Ali is very good at tennis., he is a very fast runner
a. in addition to b. However c. because d. in addition
5. I enjoy watching tennis on TV., I never play it.
a. However b. In addition c. Furthermore d. Addition
6. Hamza doesn't like Algebra, he gets high marks in it.
a. However b. Although c. Furthermore d. In addition

Unit 8 How we learn

Key Vocabulary

Lessons 1&2

intelligence	ذكاء	people's feelings	مشاعر الناس
intelligent	ذكي	diagram	رسم بياني
intelligent people	إناس أذكىء	How intelligent	ما مدي ذكائك
control	يتحكم	Muscle muscles	عضلة عضلات
balance	توازن/يتوازن	breathe	يتنفس
sailor	بحار	breath	نفس
athletes	الرياضيون/لاعب ألعاب القوي	breathing	عملية التنفس
Physical exercise	تمرين بدني	experiment	تجربة علمية

Extra Vocabulary

washing up	الغسيل	bodies	أجسام
recycle	يعيد تدوير	probably	من المحتمل
nature	طبيعة	article	مقال
environment	البيئة	paper	ورقة / ورق
moving	حركة	prefer	يفضل
way	طريق	favourite	مفضل
learning	التعلم	prepositions	حروف الجر
painting	رسم	draw	يرسم
Albert Einstein	ألبرت أينشتاين	take long	يستغرق وقتا طويلا
stand still	يثبت في مكانه	parts of	أجزاء من
measure	يقيس	bake a cake	يخبز تورتته
amazing	مدهش	ways	طرق/أساليب
fantastic	رائع	problems	مشاكل
enjoyable	ممتع	in fact	في الواقع
certainly	بالتأكيد	hobby	هواية
fun	متعة - مرح	certainly	بالتأكيد
healthy	صحي	languages	لغات

Opposites

learn	يتعلم	teach	يدرس / يعلم
intelligent	ذكي	stupid	غبى
bad for ... / at ...	سوء ل... / في ..	good for ... / at ...	جيد ل... / في ..
difficult	صعب	easy	سهل
healthy	صحي	unhealthy	غير صحي

Confusing Words

physical جسدي	balance توازن	way طريق	feel, felt يشعر	sale أوكازيون
physics فيزياء	palace قصر	weigh وزن	fall, fell يسقط	sail يبحر

Conjugations of irregular verbs:

find يجد	found found	swim يعوم	swam swum
drive يقود	drove driven	ride يركب	rode ridden
lie يستلقي	lay lain	feel يشعر	felt felt
lie يكذب	lied lied	take يأخذ	took taken
lay يضع / يبني	laid laid	teach يعلم	taught taught
understand يفهم	understood understood	learn يتعلم	learned learned learnt learnt

Prepositions & Expressions

good at + n/v.ing	جيد في	bad at + n/v.ing	سيء في
good for ..	مفيد لـ	bad for ..	ضار لـ
ready for+n /ing	مستعد لـ	find their ways	يجد طريقهم
have problems with	لديه مشاكل مع	the best way for	أفضل طريقة لـ
have an intelligence	يتمتع بالذكاء	lying in bed	الرقود في الفراش
prefer to+مصدر	يفضل أن	control muscles	يتحكم بالعضلات
do amazing things	يقوم بأشياء مذهلة	draw diagrams	يرسم رسومات بيانية
do physical exercise	يؤدي تدريب بدني	protect from	يحمي من
do tests	يؤدي إختارات	learn best by	يتعلم أفضل بـ
do an experiment	يجري تجربة علمية	in fact	في الواقع
in different ways	بطرق مختلفة	parts of	أجزاء من
learn by drawing	يتعلم بالرسم	kind of	نوع من
important for	مهم لـ	take long	يستغرق وقت طويل
for example	على سبيل المثال	fall down	يسقط أرضا
followed by	متبوع بـ..	work out	يحل / يستنتج
talk about	يتحدث عن..	work on	يعمل على..
How intelligent are you?	ما مدي ذكائك	sail on	يبحر علي ظهر

Definitions

Balance	توازن	being able to stand still.
Control	يتحكم	to make someone or something do what you want.
Sailor	بحار	someone who sails on boats or ships

Language Notes

see يرى (ملاحظة الاشخاص او الاشياء بدون قصد او تلاحظها العيون دون عمل مجهود لتلك الرؤية)

⇒ I saw him at the bus station.

look يوجه نظره الى شيء او شخص محدد بعناية (ينظر الى شيء بقصد)

⇒ Look! There is a blue car.

watch يشاهد (ينظر الى شيء لفترة من الوقت وخاصة الاشياء المتغيرة او المتحركة)

⇒ We watch television every evening.

breathing عملية التنفس

⇒ Athletes can control their muscles, breathing and balance.

breath النفس (الهواء الذي يدخل الرئتين)

⇒ He took a deep breath and dived in.

breathe يتنفس

⇒ It is difficult to breath in room because of smoke

good at + N / V ing جيد في

⇒ Athletes are good at controlling their muscles, breathing and balance very well.

⇒ Intelligent people are good at languages, maths or music.

good for + مفعول مفيد لـ

⇒ Drinking milk is good for you.

good to طيب مع / ودود مع

⇒ Salma is good to kids.

spend + مدة + V ing يقضي

⇒ He spent two hours playing the piano.

spend + نقود + on + noun ينفق

⇒ He spent a lot of money on food

Reading

How intelligent are you?

Being very intelligent can help people to do amazing things. But what makes people intelligent? Albert Einstein was a great scientist, but in fact, he had problems with reading: he certainly was not good at everything.

Experts now think that people can be intelligent in many different ways. For example, you might be intelligent because you are very good at languages, maths or music. Some people are intelligent because they are very good at controlling their bodies. Athletes have this kind of intelligence and they can control their muscles, breathing and balance very well. Other people understand people's feelings, while others might be intelligent because they understand animals and nature. Sailors have an intelligence that makes them good at finding their way across seas or up and down rivers.

If people are intelligent in different ways, it means that they will probably learn things in different ways. Writing words on paper helps some people to learn things. Others prefer to learn by drawing pictures or diagrams. Moving or physical exercise helps some people, while others learn best by working with other people

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- You need strong to be good at most sports.
a. physical b. muscles c. feelings d. memory
- 2- My father said that the car was difficult to because it was raining.
a. control b. hit c. balance d. score
- 3- My wife lost her.....and fell on the ground.
a. source b. balance c. genius d. intelligence
- 4- Athletes have fantastic control over their
a. medicines b. physics c. goods d. muscles
- 5- the scientists did some experiments to measure the animals'
a. intelligent b. diagram c. intelligence d. housework
- 6- It's so hot! I find it difficult to
a. breath b. breathing c. breathe d. breeze
- 7- athletes have fantasticover their muscles ,breathing and balance.
a. feeling b. control c. movement d. thinking
- 8- Everyone should do 30 minutes of Exercise each day.
a. medical b. scientific c. physical d. historical
- 9- athletes are good at controlling their muscles and their.....
a. breath b. breathing c. breathe d. breeze
- 10-you cana lot of muscles when you go swimming.
a. use b. do c. make d. study

11-some people prefer to learn by drawing pictures or.....

a. diagrams b. languages c. exercises d. muscles

12-scientists do different experiments to.....animal's intelligence.

a. count b. measure c. weigh d. add

13-A.....is someone who sails on boats or ships.

a. doctor b. chemist c. pilot d. sailor

14-.....fact, he had problems with reading.

a. Of b. In c. For d. To

15-You need good..... to ride a bike.

a. balance b. information c. feelings d. intelligence

-ing Forms (Gerund) إسم الفعل

نضيف للفعل ing فيتحول إلى إسم

Swim	يسبح	play	يلعب	listen	يستمتع	run	يجري
Swimming	السباحة	plauing	اللعب	listening	الإستماع	running	الجري

تستخدم صيغة ال ing كاسم (فاعل أو مفعول) :

- | | |
|---|------------------------|
| ⇒ Reading is enjoyable. | (reading = Subject) |
| ⇒ Moving or physical exercise helps other people. | (Moving = subject) |
| ⇒ I love learning. | (learning = object) |
| ⇒ Washing up isn't my favourite thing to do. | (washing up = subject) |
| ⇒ I stopped smoking. | (smoking = object) |

قد تستخدم كصفة قبل الإسم

⇒ One day, I will buy a flying car.

بعد حروف الجر يأتي gerund ما عدا to يأتي بعدها مصدر

- ⇒ Thank you for baking the cake.
 ⇒ We congratulated her on passing the exam.
 ⇒ I look forward to seeing you.

بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها gerund

enjoy	يستمتع	stop	يتوقف عن	mind	يمنع	finish	ينهي
like,love	يحب	avoid	يتجنب	admit	يعترف بـ	practice	يمارس
hate	يكره	recommend	يوصي	deny	ينكر	come	يأتي لأداء
go	يذهب	suggest	يقترح	keep	يستمر في	prevent	يمنع
prefer	يفضل	fancy	يتخيل	imagine	يتخيل	regret	يندم

- ⇒ Do you enjoy swimming?
 ⇒ Huda practises playing the piano.

- ⇒ You should avoid meeting bad people.
 ⇒ Do you fancy seeing her here?
 ⇒ I recommend reading this nice story.
 ⇒ I suggest playing tennis.
 ⇒ He admitted stealing my mobile.
 ⇒ Would you mind helping me?

بعض التعبيرات يأتي بعدهل gerund

be busy مشغول	feel like يود/يريد	It's no use ليس هناك فائدة	have prpbem لديه مشكلة
can't help لا يستطيع ان يتوقف	look forward to يتطلع إلي	can't stand لا يطيق/لا يحتمل	It's waste of money مضيعة للوقت

- ⇒ I feel like going to the zoo.
 ⇒ We are busy cleaning the garden.

ليس كل المنتهي ب ing اسم

- ⇒ I watched an exciting film yesterday. (exciting = adjective)
 ⇒ We are swimming. (are swimming = verb)

قواعد إضافة ing

١. الأفعال المنتهية بحرف e صامت يحذف ، وإذا لم يكن صامت لا يحذف:

Use → using write → writing make → making drive → driving

be → being singe → singeing يشيط dye → dyeing يصبغ

٢. إذا انتهى الفعل ب ee لا تحذفهم

see → seeing free → freeing

٣. إذا إنتهي الفعل ب ie تحول إلي y

Die → dying tie → tying lie → lying

٤. الفعل المكون من مقطع واحد وينتهي بساكن يسبقه متحرك نضاعف الساكن الأخير ماعدا (w y- x)

Put → putting run → running sit → sitting

Fix → fixing play → playing sew → sewing row → rowing

٥. الافعال المنتهية ب e] نضاعف الحرف الاخير:

Travel → travelling cancel → cancelling

It's + صفة + to+ inf. مصدر
= V.ing + is + صفة + to/for + ضمير

- It is easy for you to run with some friends. (Running)

⇒ Running with some friends is easy for you.

- It is important to talk about your problem. (Talking)

⇒ Talking about your problem is important for you.

To + اسم + مصدر
= باقي الجملة ing مصدر

- To pass the final exam is my dream. (Passing)

⇒ Passing the final exam is my dream.

Because + فاعل + فعل + صفة , جملة
Being + صفة , جملة

- Because he was ill, he didn't go to work. (Being)

⇒ Being ill, he didn't go to work.

- I feel happy when i listen to music. (Listening)

⇒ Listening to music makes me feel happy.

- Ahmed finds it easy to drive a car. (Driving)

⇒ Driving a car is easy for Ahmed.

- It's not good for your health to smoke. (Smoking)

⇒ Smoking isn't good for your health.

- Hany finds it interesting to read stories. (Reading)

⇒ Reading stories is interesting for Hany.

- It's difficult to learn Chinese. (Learning)

⇒ Learning Chinese is difficult.

- Sports help you keep fit. (Doing)

⇒ Doing sports help you keep fit.

- To pass the final exam is my dream. (Passing)

⇒ Passing the final exam is my dream.

- Because he is ill, he didn't go to school. (Being)

⇒ Being ill , he didn't go to school.

- I have a swim once a week. (swimming)
⇒ I go swimming once a week.
 - He always catches fish on holiday. (go)
⇒ He always goes fishing on holiday.
 - I always like to read short stories. (enjoy)
⇒ I enjoy reading short stories.
- 1- I congratulated noha because she bought a new car. (buying)
 - 2- It's polite to help your friends. (Helping)
 - 3- To stay up late at night is not good for your health. (Staying)
 - 4- It is always the most expensive to travel by plane (Travelling)
 - 5- Noran likes to play tennis. It's her favourite sport. (Playing)
 - 6- It isn't good for you to watch too much TV. (Watching)
 - 7- It's not healthy to lie in bed for a long time (Lying)
 - 8- It isn't comfortable to watch too much television (Watching)
 - 9- The best way to travel is by train (Travelling)
 - 10-It's dangerous to swim in deep water (Swimming)
 - 11-I feel happy when I listen to music. (Listening)
 - 12-Do you have a problem? (matter)
 - 13- What's the matter with you? (problem)
 - 14-My favourite hobby is to play tennis. (Playing)
 - 15-Do you feel happy when you listen to music? (listening)
 - 16-My sister finds it easy to learn new languages. (Learning)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. very intelligent can help people to do amazing things.
a. Been b. Be c. Being d. Is
2.by bus is the best way for tourists to see parts of the country.
a. Travelling b. Travel c. Travelled d. Travels
3. what about.....a break now? I got tired.
a. take b. taking c. took d. takes
4.television for a long time isn't good for you.
a. Watch b. To watch c. Watched d. Watching
5. Doesto music make you feel happy?
a. listening b. listen c. to listen d. listened
6.tennis is my favourite sport .
a. Plays b. Played c. Playing d. Play
7.pictures is my favourite hobby.
a. To paint b. Paints c. Paint d. Painting
8. blind means that you cannot see.
a. Be b. Will be c. Being d. Am
9. too quickly is not good for you.
a. Eat b. Eating c. To eat d. Will eat
10. Albert Einstein had problems with
a. read b. reader c. reads d. reading
11. Thank you for my cake, Mum. SB
a. baked b. bakes c. will bake d. baking
12. Mona thinks that.... bottles and paper is very important for the environment.
a. to recycle b. recycling c. recycled d. recycle
13. . I loveabout different countries.
a. learn b. to learning c. learned d. learning
14. It's not easy to understand people's
a. felt b. feelings c. feels d. feel
15. I was interested in football when I was young.
a. plays b. played c. playing d. player
16. is Huda's favourite activity.
a. singer b. To singing c. Sings d. Singing

Key Vocabulary

Lessons 3&4

I'm afraid=I'm sorry	أخشي أن/يؤسفني أن	offer help	يعرض المساعدة
frightened	مرعوب - خائف	have a problem	لدية مشكلة
online	عبر الانترنت	reserch	يبحث/بحث علمي
trouble= problem	مشكلة	science subjects	مواد علمية
brain	مخ	art subjects	مواد أدبيه
puzzle	لغز	get better	يتحسن

Extra Vocabulary

modern	حديث	parents	والدين
technology	تكنولوجيا	advice	نصيحة
project	مشروع	useful	نافع
activity	نشاط	situation	موقف
a city person	شخص يحب المدينة	without	بدون
a country person	شخص يحب الريف	make a card	يقوم بعمل بطاقة
website	موقع إلكتروني	arts	رسم
still	ثابت - مازال	computer games	ألعاب الكمبيوتر
information	معلومات	find information	يجد معلومات
person	شخص	research information	يبحث عن معلومات
science	علوم	good marks	درجات جيدة
physical exercise	تمرين بدني	difference	إختلا
rule	قانون	beach	شاطئ - بالج
soon	قريبا	address	عنوان
meaning	معنى	recordings	تسجيلات صوتية
idea	فكرة	nearly	تقريبا

Confusing Words

share	يشارك	brain	مخ	sleep	ينام	better	أفضل	advise	ينصح
chair	كرسي	mind	عقل	asleep	نائم	bitter	مر	advice	نصيحة

Opposites

online	متصل بالانترنت	offline	غير متصل بالانترنت	healthy	صحي	unhealthy	غير صحي
modern	حديث	old / ancient	قديم	safe	أمن	unsafe	غير آمن
useful	مفيد	useless	ضار غير	important	مهم	unimportant	غير هام

Prepositions & Expressions

ask for advise	يطلب النصيحة	frightened of	خائف من
offer help	يعرض المساعدة	find it difficult to	يجد من الصعب أن
go on the internet	يدخل علي الأنترنت	have a problem with	لديه مشكلة مع
sound like a good idea	تبدو كفكرة جيدة	work on project	يعمل علي تنفيذ مشروع
get better at	يتحسن في	research information online	
get good marks	يحصل علي درجات جيدة		يبحث عن معلومات علي الانترنت
spend much time	يقضي الكثير من الوقت	in trouble	في مشكلة/مأزق
talk to + شخص	يتحدث إلي	work out	يكشف/يحل
talk about + موضوع	يتحدث عن	think about / of	يفكر في..
continue to + inf.	يستمر - يتابع	important to + inf.	مهم أن
look for	يبحث عن	prefer to + inf.	يفضل أن
do		use	
do online search	يجري بحث عبر الانترنت	use your brain	إستخدم عقلك
do puzzles	يحل ألغاز	use muscles	يستخدم عضلات
do research	يقوم بعمل بحث	use a computer	يستخدم الكمبيوتر
do activity	يقوم بنشاط		
do things	يقوم بأشياء		
do well	يؤدي جيدا		

Definitions

Puzzle	لغز	a game that you have to think about carefully
I'm afraid	يوسفني	used when you are sorry to say something
Physical	بدني	to do with your body
Trouble	مشكلة	what is bad about a situation
Online	متصل بالنت	using the internet

Language Notes

I find difficult to + مصدر يجد صعوبة في

⇒ I find it difficult to look for the information that I need.

help + مفعول + مصدر / to مصدر يساعد

⇒ She helped me study /to study well.

Tapescript

What is Salma's problem?

Mother: I am Salma's mother, you asked to see me! What is the matter?

Teacher: Thank you for coming to see me. Salma is doing well at school, but she doesn't always get good marks in her homework. I want to talk to you both about this.

Mother: Have you got any problems Salma?

Salma: I am afraid that I have a problem using the internet for my homework. I find it difficult to look for the information that I need.

Mother: What do you mean Salma?

Salma: When I go on the internet, I often see interesting games that I want to play online. So, I don't always do my homework.

Mother: You know you should do your homework first before you play any computer games.

Salma: The trouble is that I really enjoy computer games. It is quite hard to think about work when I know that I can get better at a computer game if I spend more time playing it.

Teacher: Let me see if I can help. Where do you keep your computer at home?

Mother: It is a laptop so Salma usually takes it to her bedroom. It is quiet there.

Teacher: Ask Salma to only use the internet in a room where you can see her. In that way you know that she is working not playing computer games.

Mother: Should I stop her playing all computer games?

Teacher: Children need to relax and some computer games can teach you things. So, it is not bad to play computer games after she has finished her homework. But she must do her homework first and remember it is much better to play a sport such as tennis or volley ball. Sports are good for the brain as well as the body

Salma: I like tennis. Let me see if I can play at the sports club next week.

Teacher: That sounds like a good idea, Salma.

Tools For Life

- 1- You are working on a project with two other students. You are doing more work on the project than they are. You:
- tell them that their ideas are important and the project will be better if they help.
 - tell them that they have to work harder because you are doing most of the work.
- 2- You want to do your homework, but you are finding it difficult to stop playing computer games. You:
- Ask your teacher or your parents for advice.
 - You don't do anything about it and continue to play computer games.
- 3- Your younger brother has a problem with a school project. He asks for your help. You:
- listen to his ideas for the project and try to add some more useful ideas.
 - tell him that it is better for him to do it without help.
- 4- A new student has arrived in the class from another country. You:
- talk to the students in your class about what you can do to help the new student feel happy at your school.
 - wait for the new student to talk to you.
- 5- Your teacher is ill. You want the teacher to know that the class is thinking about him / her. You:
- work in small groups and make a card for him / her.
 - make a card for him / her yourself.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- Did you have any Finding your way to the new school?
a. tree b. trip c. tribe d. trouble
- 2- We used my father's computer to buy the book..... WB
a. online b. In line c. offline d. At line
- 3- I'm that we can't go swimming because the pool is closed.
a. fear b. afraid c. fair d. fare
- 4- I didn't understand this. Do you know the answer? WB
a. song b. film c. puzzle d. story
- 5- The scientists have.....some important research into climate change. WB
a. sent b. gone c. done d. used
- 6- It is important for old people to continue to.....their brains everyday. WB
a. use b. do c. make d. win
- 7- Do you know how to.....this computer? LM
a. use b. do c. make d. be
- 8- When I go on the internet, I see.....games. they are enjoyable. SB
a. boring b. bored c. interesting d. interested
- 9- Exercises that you do with your body are called.....
a. mental b. chemical c. physical d. historical

- 10- A..... is a game that you have to think about carefully to find clues.
a. puzzle **b. problem** **c. trouble** **d. research**
- 11- Did you have any..... finding your way to the new school ?
a. puzzle **b. trouble** **c. double** **d. accidents**
- 12- When you are sorry for doing something wrong, you can say I'm.....
a. busy **b. afraid** **c. right** **d. lazy**
- 13- My family are going to fly to England, but I'm..... of flying.
a. angry **b. happy** **c. busy** **d. frightened**
- 14- How can using computer late at night..... your sleep ?
a. effect **b. reflect** **c. affect** **d. perfect**
- 15- Soha spends much time..... puzzles.
a. making **b. doing** **c. taking** **d. giving**
- 16- fell Ask your teacher or your parents..... advice.
a. in **b. to** **c. for** **d. on**

Talking about Problems

السؤال عن المشاكل Asking about problems

Have you got any problems? هل لديك أي مشاكل؟
 What is the matter? ما الأمر؟
 What's wrong? ما الأمر؟

التحدث عن المشاكل Talking about problems

I am afraid that+جملة أخشى أنني
 The trouble/problem is that + جملة المشكلة أن
 I find it difficult to+ مصدر أجد من الصعب أن ...

عرض المساعدة Offering help

Let me see if I can help. دعني أرى لو أستطيع مساعدتك
 Can I help you? هل أستطيع مساعدتك؟

What would you say in each of the following situation:

- **Your brother can't do his homework alone. Offer help.**
 ⇒ Let me see if I can help./Can I help you?
- **A friend asks you why you look worried. It's because you have a problem using the printer.**
 ⇒ The trouble is that I have a problem using the printer.
- **You see a person looking under their car. You want to know if they need help.**
 ⇒ Can I help you? / what's the matter?
- **Your friend asks you, " what's the matter"?**
 ⇒ The tproblem is that I have lost my phone.
- **An old woman needs your help.**
 ⇒ Sure, I can help you.

- 1- You see an old man crossing the street. You offer to help him.
- 2- You see a person looking for his bag. You want to know if he needs help.
- 3- An old woman needs your help.
- 4- You see a child crying in the street.
- 5- You fell down in the street and you ask the help of someone passing near to you
- 6- Your friend is looking under his desk. You want to know if he needs help
- 7- Someone has a problem and you offer to help him
- 8- Your friend finds it difficult to learn. Offer to help him with his problems.
- 9- You want to tell your friend that you have a problem using the internet.
- 10- You offer to help someone who has a problem using the internet.
- 11- An old man wants to cross the street. you offer to help him.
- 12- Someone has helped you.
- 13- A friend asks you why you look worried. It's because you have a problem using the printer

Finish the following dialogue:

Nabila: What's the, Amira?

Amira: I'm afraid I have with my internet project. I it difficult to know the right websites. The is that there are so many different websites.

Nabila: Let me if I can help. It's quite..... to know which websites are best, so choose one that you know.

Finish the following dialogue:

Teacher: We have nearly finished today's lesson. Have you got any (1)..... ?

Mona : Yes. I (2)..... it difficult to remember the difference between beach and beats.

Teacher: Let me see if I can (3)..... . A beach is what you find next to the sea. A football team beats another team when it wins.

Mona : The (4)..... is, when I hear beach, I sometimes think it is the word beats!

Teacher: Listen to all of the sentence and you will (5)..... the meaning

Unit 9 The Senses

Key Vocabulary

Lessons 1&2

system	نظام	dots	نقط
work out	يفهم/يستنتج	Louis Braille	لويس برايل (مخترع)
look up	يبحث عن معنى كلمة	Braille system	نظام برايل
Make up	يخترع/يؤلف	sign	إشارة - علامة
improve	يحسن/يتحسن	soldier	جندي
blind	أعمى	protect	يحمي
blind people= the blind	المكفوفين	equipment	معدات
deaf	أصم (لا يسمع)	senses	حواس

Extra Vocabulary

Lessons 1&2

Braille printers	طابعات بنظام برايل	letters	خطابات
Braille dictionary	قاموس بنظام برايل	meaning	معنى
ebook (electronic book)	كتاب إلكتروني	message	رسالة
adults	البالغين	students	طالب
shape	شكل	finger	إصبع اليد
continue	يستمر	squash	لعبة الإسكواش
change	يُغير/يتغير	triangle	مثلث
tour guide	مرشد سياحي	square	مربع
tour	جولة سياحية	circle	دائرة
next door	الجوار	give information	يعطي معلومات
dictionaries	قواميس	factory	مصنع
stadium	استاد	muscles	عضلات
crowded	مزدحم	great	عظيم
accident	حادثة	reason	سبب
professor	استاذ جامعي	person	شخص
village	قرية	university	جامعة
produce	ينتج	sound	يبدو - صوت
extra	إضافي	instead of	بدلاً من

Opposites

excited	مثار /منفعل	bored	يشعر بالملل
best	أفضل	worst	أسوأ
strong	قوي	weak	ضعيف

Confusing Words

tour	جولة	site	موقع	paper	ورق	message	رسالة	improve	يحسن
tower	برج	sight	الرؤية	a paper	جريدة	massage	مساج	prove	يثبت

Conjugations of irregular verbs:

become	يصبح	became	become	find	يجد	found	found
keep	يُبقى	kept	kept	go	يذهب	went	gone
sit	يجلس	sat	sat	show	يوضح	showed	shown
make up	يؤلف - يخترع	made up	made up	give	يعطي	gave	given

Prepositions & Expressions

make up signs	يبتكر/يخترع إشارات	use dots as text	يستخدم النقاط كنص مكتوب
becom blind	يصبح أعمى	in language	بلغة
in Braille	بطريقة برايل	on a page	علي الصفحة
took his name	سُميت بأسمه	add to	يضيف إلي
change a text into Braille	يحول النص إلي برايل	make it easier for	يجعله أسهل لـ
a school for blind people	مدرسة للمكفوفين	books of signs	كتب الإشارات
improve system	يطور نظام	keep fit	يحافظ علي اللياقة البدنية

Definitions

System	نظام	a way of doing some thing
Adult	بالغ	you are this when you are 18 or older
work out	يستنتج	to calculate something
Equipment	معدات	things that are needed of particular activity or purpose
Soldier	جندي	a person who works to protect a country
Sign	علامة/إشارة	words or pictures that give information
Shape	شكل	a square, circle and triangle are examples of this
Blind	كفيف	not able to see

Language Notes

work out يفهم / يستنتج

⇒ When students touch the letters , they could work out the meaning.

make up = invent يخترع/يؤلف

⇒ He made up signs for maths and music.

continue to + مصدر يستمر

⇒ He continued to add more signs to his system.

continue + v.ing يستمر

⇒ He continued adding more signs to his system.

The + صفة تشير إلى فئة معينة من الناس

⇒ The blind = blind people المكفوفين the deaf = deaf people الصم

Equipment/ news / information (s) أسماء لا تعد ومفرد دائما (تأخذ فعل مضاف له s)

⇒ the news was bad yesterday. ⇒ The information on the internet is useful

A way to + مصدر طريقة لـ

⇒ Louis wanted to find a way to improve the system.

A way for +ing طريقة لـ

⇒ Louis wanted to find a way for improving the system.

Reading

Louis Braille

Louis Braille, who was born in 1809, became blind after an accident when he was three. At first, Louis went to school in his village, where his father made equipment for horses. When he was ten, he went to a school for blind children in Paris. In the school library, there were 14 books which had a system of dots instead of letters. When students touched the letters, they could work out the meaning of the words. Louis wanted to find a way to improve the system.

Then in 1821, a man called Charles Barbier visited the school. Barbier, who was a soldier, showed the students his own system of dots on paper. It was used by soldiers to read and write messages at night. Louis decided to improve Barbier's system to make it easier for blind people to use. When he was 15, he wrote his first book of signs. He continued adding more signs to his system. He also made up signs for maths and music. The signs took his name: Braille.

These days, new technology has made Braille even easier to use. Some computers, which can quickly change text into Braille, now have Braille printers. Electronic books (e-books) can also be read in Braille.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- A/An..... person who works to protect the country.
a. soldier b. doctor c. teacher d. baker
- 2- You become..... when you are eighteen years old.
a. an adult b. a soldier c. a hero d. honest
- 3- That boy is , so he cannot see.
a. deaf b. blind c. intelligent d. clever
- 4- Some computers cantext into Braille
a. work b. change c. invent d. touch
- 5- Can you work..... What that new word means.
a. out b. on c. in d. up
- 6- Louis Braille made up for maths and music.
a. senses b. signs c. dots d. subjects
- 7- Louis Braille Barbier's system of dots to make it easier.
a. showed b. kept c. improved d. enjoyed
- 8- The writing of most languages uses different lines.
a. system b. survey c. surname d. measure
- 9- Louis Braille signs for maths and music, as well as letters.
a. looked up b. handed out c. made up d. worked
- 10- To find the meaning of a word, you should look it in the dictionary.
a. down b. up c. for d. after
- 11- Books of blind people use dots instead.....letters.
a. on b. with c. of d. in
- 12- A/an.....person is not able to see
a. deaf b. blind c. dumb d. adult
- 13- Squares, circles and triangles are examples of
a. signs b. shapes c. ships d. systems
- 14- The signs that Braille added to the system his name.
a. stayed b. took c. visited d. played

ضمائر الوصل Relative clause

Defining relative clauses

عبارات الوصل المحددة

تستخدم لتحديد الإسم وإعطاء معلومات أساسية عنه ولا يمكن حذف عبارة الوصل ولا نستخدم معها comma

Ali is the person **who I met last night.**

يمكن أن تحل **that** مكان **who/which**

Ali is the person **that I met last night.**

Non defining relative clauses

عبارات الوصل الغير المحددة

لا تحدد الاسم وتعطي معلومات إضافية (غير ضرورية) عن الإسم المشار اليه ويمكن حذفها ونضع لها comma

My brother, **who is 40**, is a teacher.

لا يمكن أن تحل **that** مكان **who/which**

My brother, **that is 40**, is a teacher.

الذي/التي/الذين(تستخدم مكان الفاعل أو المفعول العاقل) جملة / فعل + who + عاقل

- Louis Braille, who was born in 1809, became blind after an accident when he was three.
- Barbier, who was a soldier, showed the students his own system of dots on paper.
- Mr Zaki, who lives next door, is a scientist.
- The children, who enjoyed drawing shapes in the sand, stayed on the beach all day.
- The tour guide, who knew everything about Egypt, gave us a tour of the city
- The professor, who works at the university, knows everything about maths.

• I always visit my grandparents when school finishes. They live next door. **(who)**

⇒ I always visit my grandparents, who live next door, when school finishes.

• Ali 's father is a scientist. He works in the university. **(who)**

⇒ Alaa's father, who works in the university, is a scientist

الذي/التي/الذين(تستخدم مكان غير العاقل) which + غير عاقل

- Elephants, which live for around 45 years, are found in Africa.
- Some computers, which can quickly change text into Braille, now have Braille printers.
- English, which all students study at school, is a very important subject.
- Squash, which is my favourite sport, keeps me fit.

• The story is very good. It was written by a famous Egyptian writer. **(which)**

⇒ The story, which was written by a famous Egyptian writer, is very good.

• Give me the book. You borrowed it from me last week. **(which)**

⇒ Give me the book, which you borrowed from me last week.

تستخدم مكان الملكية اسم + whose + اسم

(my - his - her - its - your - our - their - اسم)

- Mr Adel, whose factory produces cotton clothes, is very rich.
- My brother, whose muscles are very strong, carried the heavy bags.

My friend is called Hany. His father is a mechanic. (whose)

⇒ My friend, whose father is a mechanic, is called Hany.

حيث(تحل محل المكان في الجملة الثانية) where + مكان

(it/there/here) أو ما ينوب عن المكان مثل

- Louis went to school in his village, where his father made equipment for horses.
- We went to visit my cousins in Luxor, where they have lived since the 1970s.
- Abu Gorab, where we went on our school trip last year, is a very interesting place.
- Luxor, where thousands of tourists stay every year, is near the Nile.
- Many tourists in London visit Wembley Stadium, where you can see many sports.

• I went to Giza. I saw the pyramids there. (where)

⇒ I went to Giza, where I saw the pyramids.

• I like Cairo. I have lived in Cairo for three years. (where)

⇒ I like Cairo, where I have lived for three years.

where بدلا من **which** نستخدم

إذا تحدثنا عن المكان كشيء ليس كمكان أن أن الجملة ليس بها حدث يتم (أي أن الجملة وصف للمكان)

➤ My brother works in the bank, which is near my school.

➤ Our school, which has about 1,000 students, is more than 100 years old.

➤ Our school, which I like very much, is ten years old.

إذا كان بالجملة حرف جر قبل ضمير الوصل أو في الجملة

➤ Our school, which I learn in, is ten years old.

➤ Our school, in which I learn, is ten years old.

في حالة (فعل + which)

➤ This is the school which was built last year.

• I like Cairo. I have lived in Cairo for three years. (which)

⇒ I like Cairo, which I have lived in for three years.

• The library is the place which I read in. (where)

⇒ The library is the place where I read.

when + زمن عندما (تحل محل الزمن في الجملة الثانية)

➤ The photo shows Alexandria in 1990, when my parents lived there.

➤ Ramadan is a special month when we fast.

when بدلا من **which** نستخدم

إذا تحدثنا عن الزمن كشيء ليس كوقت

➤ Friday is the day which I like.

إذا كان بالجملة حرف جر قبل ضمير الوصل أو في الجملة

➤ May is the month which I was born in.

ملاحظات

١- عند ربط جملتين نضع ضمير الوصل والجملة الثانية بعد الاسم الذي يشير إليه مباشرة

• My friend is called Hany. His father is a mechanic. (whose)

⇒ My friend, whose father is a mechanic, is called Hany.

• The Deaf School was set up in Cairo. It is for all children from all over Egypt. (which)

⇒ The Deaf School, which is for all children from all over Egypt, was set up in Cairo

٢- إذا جاءت جملة الوصل في منتصف الجملة نضع قبلها comma وبعدها comma

➤ Elephants, which live for around 45 years, are found in Africa.

٣- إذا جاءت جملة الوصل في آخر الجملة نضع بعدها comma

➤ The photo shows Alexandria in 1990, when my parents lived there.

٤- إذا بدأت الجملة بـ (موصوف + Adj) نتبع الأتي

نبدأ بالموصوف ← نضع ضمير وصل مناسب ← نضع تصريف مناسب من Be ثم الصفة ← نضع باقي الجملة

باقي الجملة , صفة , who be , موصوف

- A beautiful girl won the the prize. (who)

⇒ A girl, who was beautiful, won the prize.

Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- I went to visit my cousin last week. She lives in Luxor. (who)
⇒
- My uncle is an engineer. He lives in Tanta. (who)
⇒
- This is the village. My grandfather was born there. (where)
⇒
- Those are the people. Their car was stolen. (whose)
⇒
- Swimming keeps me fit. It's my favourite sport (which)
⇒
- The story is very good. It was written by a famous Egyptian (which)
⇒
- Ahmed's cousin is a doctor. He lives in Assyut. (who)
⇒
- Mona received a medal for winning the race. She is an excellent runner. (who)
⇒
- Heba travelled to Hurghada. She spent a nice holiday there (where)
⇒
- Ramzy sent beautiful flowers to his mother. (which)
⇒
- Maya is slightly deaf. She is learning Egyptian Sign Language (who)
⇒
- The Deaf School was set up in Cairo. It is for all children from all over Egypt. (which)
⇒
- Mr Adel is very rich. his factory produces cotton clothes. (whose)
⇒
- July is the month . We go on holiday in it. (when)
⇒
- Our school is more than 100 years old. It has about 1,000 students. (which)
⇒
- My brother carried the heavy bags. his muscles are very strong. (whose)
⇒

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Neighbour Is a teacher, helps me with my english
a. whose b. who c. which d. where
2. The photo shows Alexandria in 1990, my parents lived there.
a. when b. who c. which d. where
3. Mr Yasser lives next door, is a scientist
a. whose b. who c. which d. whom
4. We went to the supermarket, we bought some food.
a. when b. who c. which d. where
5. The museum, is near my house, is always busy in the afternoon.
a. whose b. who c. which d. where
6. I played a wonderful game with my friends, made us so happy.
a. whose b. who c. which d. where
7. Ahmad, father is ill, is really sad.
a. that b. who c. which d. whose
8. This is the company we work in.
a. when b. who c. which d. where
9. Winter is the quietest time I can travel to Alexandria.
a. when b. who c. which d. where
10. The email I received yesterday gave me exciting news.
a. when b. who c. that d. where
11. Luxor, thousands of tourists stay every year, is near the Nile
a. which b. when c. that d. where
12. English all students study at school is a very important subject.
a. which b. who c. whose d. where
13. My brother, his muscles are very strong , carried the heavy bags.
a. which b. who c. whose d. where
14. The post office, is opposite the bank, is crowded today.
a. when b. who c. which d. where
- 15- Our school, I like very much, is ten years old.
a. when b. who c. which d. where
- 16- Mr Adel, factory produces cotton clothes, is very rich.
a. which b. who c. that d. whose
- 17- March is the month, I was born
a. which b. who c. when d. where
- 18- The professor, works at the university, knows everything about maths.
a. which b. who c. whose d. where
- 19- This is the house my father bought last year.
a. when b. who c. which d. where
- 20- The story, was written by a famous Egyptian, is very good.
a. which b. who c. that d. whose

Lessons 3&4

Phrasal Verbs الأفعال الإصطلاحية

هي أفعال يتبعها حرف جر فيغير معناها الأساسي

set up	يؤسس - ينشئ	Our school was set up in the 1990s.
take up	يبدأ نشاط / يتعلم	He encourages them to take up languages.
make up	يخترع - يؤلف	The story is unbelievable. She made it up.
work out	يستنبط - يستنتج	Waleed could work out the word meaning.
find out	يكتشف/يعرف معلومة	I didn't find out about the crime until now.
look for	يبحث عن شيء	The police are looking for the thief.
look up	يبحث عن كلمة	They look up words and find out the meaning.
hand out	يعطي - يسلم	He will hand out information to the police.

Key Vocabulary

deaf	اصم / اطرش	set up	يؤسس - ينشئ
deaf school	مدرسة الصم	Egyptian sign language	لغة الإشارة المصرية
Sign language	لغة الإشارة	invite	يدعو
slightly	قليلا	invitation	دعوة
hand out = give	يسلم / يوزع / يعطي	accept = agree	وافق
concert	حفلة موسيقية	refuse = disagree	يرفض
communicate	يتواصل	wedding	حفل زفاف
deaf school	مدارس الصم والبكم	reason	سبب

Extra Vocabulary

join	ينضم الى	Bibliotheca Alexandria	مكتبة الاسكندرية
education schools	المدارس الحكومية	sports match	مباراة رياضية
general education schools	مدارس التعليم عام	special	خاص
achievement	إنجاز	give a reason	يعطي سبب
activities	انشطة	weekly	اسبوعي
orchestra	أوركسترا(فرقة موسيقية)	moreover	علاوة على ذلك
encourage	يشجع	weekly classes	حصص إسبوعية
recommendation	توصية - تذكية	pyramids	أهرامات
charity	جمعية خيرية	camels	جمال
without water	بدون ماء	at all	على الإطلاق
picnic	نزهة	neighbour	جار
find out / discover	يكتشف	friendly	ودود

Confusing Words

set	يجهز	accept	يقبل	well	حسناً	plan	خطة	invitation	دعوة
sit	يجلس	except	ما عدا	will	سوف	plane	طائرة	invention	إختراع

Opposites

huge	ضخم	tiny	صغير جدا	friendly	ودود	unfriendly	أنطوائي
refuse	يرفض	accept	يوافق	tired	متعب	relaxed	مسترخي
politely	بأدب	impolitely	بوقاحة	agree	يوافق	disagree	يرفض

Conjugations of irregular verbs

set up	يبدأ	set up	set up	hear	يسمع	heard	heard
give	يعطى	gave	given	teach	يعلم	taught	taught
take	يأخذ	took	taken	get to	يصل الى	got to	got to
sell	يبيع	sold	sold	forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten

Prepositions & Expressions

in two weeks' time	في خلال إسبوعين	Would you like to + inf ?	هل تود أن... ؟
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	I'd love to.	أريد ذلك
do the shopping	يقوم بالتسوق	It sounds great	يبدو رائعا
accept an invitation	يقبل الدعوة	everyday life	الحياة اليومية
refuse an invitation	يرفض الدعوة	read music in braille	يقرأ النوتة بطريقة برايل
take turns to + inf.	يتبادل الأدوار لكي..	live for	يعيش لمدة
communicate with	يتواصل مع شخص	all over egypt	في جميع أنحاء مصر
communicate by	يتواصل بواسطة	at weekends	في عطلات نهاية الاسبوع
invite to	يدعو إلي	take up = learn	يتعلم
without water	بدون ماء	hand out = give	يسلم / يوزع / يعطي
move to	ينتقل إلي	set up = start	يؤسس / ينشئ
teach+ مفعول + about	يعلم عن	take + وقت + to + inf	يستغرق
set off	يبدأ رحلة	get to	يصل إلي

Definitions

sign language	لغة الإشارة	a language that is communicated by the hands
slightly deaf	يسمع قليلا	someone who can't hear well
hand out	يسلم / يوزع	give
take up	يتعلم / يشغل / يستخدم	Learn
set up	يبدأ / ينشيء / يقيم	start
look up	يبحث عن	find

Language Notes

communicate in + لغة **يتواصل بـ**

⇒ My children aren't able to communicate in English.

communicate with + شخص **يتواصل مع**

⇒ We need to communicate with each other.

communicate by + وسيلة **يتواصل بواسطة**

⇒ Sign Language is a language that is communicated by the hand.

Connected to + شيء **متصل بـ**

⇒ The printer is connected to the computer.

accept + V ing/ N **يقبل / يوافق**

⇒ I accepted her invitation. I accepted goin to the party.

agree to + مصدر **يوافق أن**

⇒ I agreed to go to the party.

Would you like to + مصدر **هل تود أن**

⇒ Would you like to go to the concert with me tomorrow?

Tapescript



Hassan : Hi! Tarik.

Tarik : Hello! Hassan. How are you?

Hassan : I'm fine, thanks.

Tarik : What are you doing later this afternoon? Would you Like to go to the sports club to play football?

Hassan : I am sorry I'd love to but I can't because I am I going shopping with my sister Manal. She knows someone who plays in an orchestra. They're coming here to play in a concert soon so we're going to hand out information to people about the concert so I'm afraid I can't play football today.

Tarik : Ah, tell me more about the orchestra,

Hassan : The orchestra which is called Al Nour wol Amal orchestra was set up in the 1950s for blind girls and women. They all read music in Braille.

Tarik : That's a great achievement.

Hassan : Yes, it is.

Tarik : They travel all over the world and the next concert is here in two weeks' time. I'd like to invite you to it. Can you come?

Hassan : I'd love to! It sounds great.

Reading

The Deaf School in Cairo

The Deaf School in Cairo was set up in 1982 for children from all over Egypt. There ore about 70 children at the school, where most of them live during the week. They go home at weekends and during the holidays.

At the school, students learn Egyptian Sign Language.They also learn reading and writing in Arabic and English, maths, science, PE. and computer studies.

The teachers at the Deaf School believe that it is really important for deaf people to be able to communicate with people who can hear. They encourage the family and friends of deaf students to take up sign language themselves at special weekly classes for people who can hear.They also plan activities where both deaf people and people who can hear can learn about each other's lives,

More schools are now open for deaf learners all over Egypt. Moreover, slightly deaf students are now included in general education schools so that they can be with other students that hear well.

Reading

Hi Leila,

How are you ? I haven't seen you for a long time. I'd like to invite you to stay with my family during the holidays. There are many activities that you will enjoy. We can visit the Bibliotheca Alexandrina. It isn't only a library: there are four museums inside as well. It is very interesting. Would you like to go to a concert, too ? There is a famous orchestra playing in a few weeks.

Here's my address:

28 Khaled ibn Al Waleed St,
Miami.

I hope you can come!

All the best,
Magda

Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d

- 1- The teacher asked Ahmed to the books to the class.
 a. hand out b. hand up c. look up d. look out
- 2- Ahmed usually plays the violin in a / an on Sundays .
 a. orchestra b. music c. invitation d. spectator
- 3- Reem's family enjoyed their holiday in Nuweiba and they want to again next year
 a. go back b. go forward c. go on d. go in
- 4- The School was 40 years ago.
 a. set to b. set down c. set up d. set off
- 5- That girl is, so she cannot hear you.
 a. blind b. intelligent c. tired d. deaf
- 6- Deaf students up sign language.
 a. take b. stand c. look d. set
- 7- In Egypt, deaf students are now included in general education schools.
 a. slowly b. accurately c. slightly d. amazingly
- 8- The tourist did not speak Arabic, but we in English.
 a. handed out b. set up c. communicated d. made up
- 9- Look, I've got an to Mona's family party next week!
 a. orchestra b. adult c. invention d. invitation
- 10- the orchestra is having a next Friday.
 a. match b. game c. music d. concert
- 11- language is the way used by deaf people to communicate using hands.
 a. Sign b. Body c. Eye d. Mouth
- 12- It is important for deaf people to with people who can hear.
 a. connect b. invite c. include d. communicate

- 13- We should help deaf students to..... up sign language.
a. make **b.go** **c. set** **d. take**
- 14- Al Nour Wal Amal orchestra read music Braille.
a. in **b. with** **c. by** **d. at**

Language Function

الدعوة Invitation

- Would you like to + مصدر ? هل تود أن
- I'd like to invite you to+مكان / مناسبة / مصدر . أود أن أدعيك أن/إلي.....
- Do you want to come to +... المناسبة ? هل تريد أن تأتي ل.....

قبول الدعوة Accepting invitation

I'd love to! أود ذلك
 That / It sounds great. هذا رائع
 I'd be pleased to come. سأكون مسرور

رفض الدعوة Refusing invitation

I'm sorry, أنا أسف
 I'm afraid I can't. أخشي أنني لاأستطيع
 I'd love to, but I can't because
 أود ذلك لكن لا أستطيع لأن

Write what you would say in each of the following situations

- 1- Your friend invites you to lunch. Refuse politely.
 ⇒ *I'm afraid I can't because I have to go home for lunch.*
- 2- You want to invite your mother to a concert for Mother's Day.
 ⇒ *Would you like to go to a concert with me for Mother's Day?*
- 3- Your cousin invites you to his wedding. You accept his invitation
 ⇒ *I'd love to!*
- 4- You invite your friend to your sister's wedding.
 ⇒ *I'd like to invite you to my sister's wedding.*
- 5- You accept your aunt's invitation to the circus.
 ⇒
- 6- You politely refuse a friend's invitation to the cinema.
 ⇒
- 7- A friend invites you to go to the museum this Friday. You would like to go.
 ⇒
- 8- Your friend invites you to dinner. Refuse politely
 ⇒
- 9- You invite your friend to your birthday party.
 ⇒

10- Your cousin invites you to have dinner with him. You don't accept his invitation

⇒

11- Your friend invited you to his wedding. Accept.

⇒

12- You want to invite your friend to your house next Friday

⇒

13- You want a friend to go with you to the club tomorrow.

⇒

14- A friend asks you to go to the cinema this week. You like to go .

⇒

15- You want to invite your friend to attend your birthday party.

⇒

16- You want to invite your friend to your house this Saturday.

⇒

17- You want a friend to go with you to the museum this Thursday.

⇒

Finish the following dialogue:

Omar invites Moaz to go with him to the park.

Omar : Would you like to come with us to the park on Friday, Moaz?

Moaz : I'd like to, but I (1)

Omar : (2) ?

Moaz : This English test is on Sunday.

Omar : OK, (3) ?

Moaz : Yes, I studied well.

Omar : (4)

Moaz : Thank you, Moaz.

Finish the following dialogue:

Nahid is talking to Marwa about Mahomed Ali Rashwan, the judo player.

Nahid : Do you like sport ?

Marwa : (1).....

Nahid : (2)..... ?

Marwa : Judo is my favourite sport.

Nahid : Who is your favourite Judo player ?

Marwa : (3).....

Nahid : (4)..... ?

Marwa : Yes, he was so famous and he won many medals.

Review C**An amazing exhibition**

One day last week, our teacher handed out some information about an exhibition in London, where I live. He said that we should go if we were interested in history. The exhibition had historic jewellery and statues which are from the time of Tutankhamun. My friend Alex, who know that I love history, said, "Revising history will be easier if we go." So we both decided to go at the weekend. It took me less time to get to the exhibition than Alex, but he wasn't very late.

The exhibition was set up in a huge, famous building where people could see the amazing jewels, art and statues from different museums in Egypt. Before it arrived in London, the exhibition travelled to four other cities, where thousands of people came to see it. Understanding Egypt's history is something we all want to do! I looked up all the information that I could find about Tutankhamun before I went. I was very excited to see everything. I also found out about Howard Carter, who worked out how to find Tutankhamun in Egypt. It was very difficult for him, but he refused to stop trying and he finally discovered Tutankhamun in 1922. "Our teacher was right," Alex said when we got home. "That exhibition taught us a lot about history." This was true: it was a good recommendation.

Tapescript

Speaker 1 : What's the matter? You look tired.

Speaker 2 : I've homework all afternoon. However, I find it difficult to work out these problems.

Speaker 1 : Would you like me to help?

Speaker 2 : That sounds great. We have a test in a few days.

Speaker 2 : The trouble is that I can't memorise so many rules.

Speaker 1 : I've always been interested in maths. So, let me see if I can help. Now, what's the answer to this one?

Speaker 2 : I think I can solve that. Is it 25?

Speaker 1 : Well done!

Practice Test 3a**1. Finish the following dialogue:**

Fatma is at school with her friend Lamia.

Fatma : You look worried.

Lamia : Yes, I am very worried.

Fatma : (1)..... ?

Lamia : I'm afraid that I can't find my book.

Fatma : (2)..... Is this it?

Lamia : Yes, it is. Thank you! We're discussing the book in my book club.

(3).....?

Fatma : Yes, I would love to come. Thank you for inviting me.

Lamia : (4).....

Fatma : Ok. I'll be there at 5.

2. Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. Although you lost the game, you congratulate your opponent.

.....

2. You want to invite your friend to your house this Saturday.

.....

3. You see a person looking under their car. You want to know if they need help.

.....

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

Many experts think that people first played rugby in 1823. At this time, students at Rugby School in England were playing football. Then, a boy called William Webb-Ellis took the ball in his hands and ran towards the opponents. This made a new game. To score in rugby, teams have to run with or kick the ball to one end of the field. The ball is oval, like an egg. You have to be fast and strong to be good at playing rugby. Many players, who can weigh about 100 kilograms, are very big! Today, rugby is very popular in many countries. About 100 countries play the sport. However, it is not as popular as football. More than 200 countries play that sport.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. What 's the main idea of the passage ?

.....

2. What sort of person do you need to be in order to play rugby well ?

.....

3. Why do you think that William Webb-Ellis decided to take the ball with his hands ?

.....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. An oval is

a. a shape b. a kind of football c. a kind of plastic d. a kind of egg

5. Rugby got its name from

a. a player b. a country c. a school d. an egg

C. The Reader**a. Match column A with column B:**

1. Joe Green	a. was angry with Joe for taking care of Black Beauty.
2. John Manly	b. reported the rude driver to the police.
3. The factory driver	c. had to move to a warmer climate.
4. Mrs Gordon	d. took a note to Dr White.
	e. hit the horses with a whip.

b. Answer the following questions:

3. Do you think that John was right to have a helper who is only fourteen ?

⇒

4. Why do you think that the driver of the carriage near the factory was rude to Joe ?

⇒

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. blind means that you cannot see.

a. Be b. Will be c. Being d. Am

2. My neighbour is a teacher, sometimes helps me with my English.

a. whose b. who c. which d. where

3. What did you do before you came to school this morning ?

a. must b. have c. have to d. had to

4. Who is your in the tennis competition ?

a. opponent b. spectator c. inventor d. opposite

5. Hassan's father said that the car was difficult to because it was raining.

a. balance b. score c. control d. hit

6. The teacher asked me to the books to the class.

a. hand out b. hand up c. look up d. look out

6. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. Tarek is very good at tennis. He's good at basketball, too. **(Furthermore)**

.....

2. It is not necessary to get up early tomorrow. It's a holiday. **(have to)**

.....

3. Do you have a problem ? **(matter)**

.....

7. Write a paragraph of about 110 words on:

A sport you like

Practice Test 3b**1. Finish the following dialogue:**

Fawzi is talking about sport with his friend Munir.

Fawzi : How do you become good at basketball, Munir ?

Munir : You have to be tall and fast. (1).....?

Fawzi : I'm not tall or fast. (2)

Munir : I'm sure that you are good at some sports. What about chess ? I'm playing a game of chess this evening. Would you like to play ?

Fawzi : (3)

Munir : OK, we can play another evening when you're not visiting your grandparents. (4)

Fawzi : Tomorrow evening is perfect. See you then!

2. Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. A friend asks you to go to the beach this Saturday. You would like to go.

.....

2. A friend asks you why you look worried. It's because you have a problem using the printer.

.....

3. You want a friend to go with you to the museum this Thursday.

.....

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

There are about 285 million people in the world who are blind or find it difficult to see. However, not many of these people can read Braille. The problem is that Braille books are not cheap. The cost of making a Braille book is four or five times more than any other book. Technology can help blind people. Some of them can listen to news and information on smartphones. There are also "talking books" which blind people can listen to. However, some blind people prefer to read. Now, you can also buy Braille ebooks. At the moment, these are difficult to make and expensive to buy. However, scientists are now working on Braille ebooks that might be cheaper than Braille books in the future. These ebooks might be the best way to help blind people. That would be good news for millions of people.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. How many people have problems with seeing ?

.....

2. Why do you think that Braille books are not cheap to make ?

.....

3. What does the underlined word "That" refer to?

.....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The cost of something is how
- a. much money you need to buy it** **b. long it takes to make**
c. many people use it **d. you make something**
5. If they become cheaper, more blind people will probably usein the future.
- a. Braille books** **b. Braille ebooks** **c. smartphones** **d. books**

C. The Reader**a. Match column A with column B:**

1. Joe Green	a. were Black Beauty's new owners.
2. John Manly	. stayed with Black Beauty until he became better.
3. Squire Gordon and Mrs Gordon	c. hit the horses near the factory
Earl and lady Smythe	d. stopped singing after Black Beauty became ill.
	e. had to leave England.

b. Answer the following questions:

1. do you think was right to be angry with Joe Green after black beauty became ill? Why/Why not ?

⇒

2. Why do you think John said that Joe Green "looked taller" ?

⇒

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I didn't understand this Do you know the answer?
a. title **b. story** **c. word** **d. puzzle**
2. Can you work what the new word mean?
a. up **b. in** **c. out** **d. by**
3. He..... wash his hands before he eats.
a. mustn't **b. must** **c. have to** **d. hasn't**
4. You become..... when you are eighteen years old.
a. an adult **b. a soldier** **c. an opponent** **d. honest**
5. The tourist did not speak Arabic, but we..... in English.
a. handed out **b. set up** **c. communicated** **d. made up**
6. You need strong..... to be good at most sports.
a. physical **b. muscles** **c. feelings** **d. memory**

6. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. It's sunny today, but it's not very hot. (However)

2. I went to visit my cousin last week. She lives in Luxor. (who)

3. It isn't healthy to lie in bed for a long time. (Lying)

7- Write an email of about 100 words on

Inviting your friend to your birthday party.

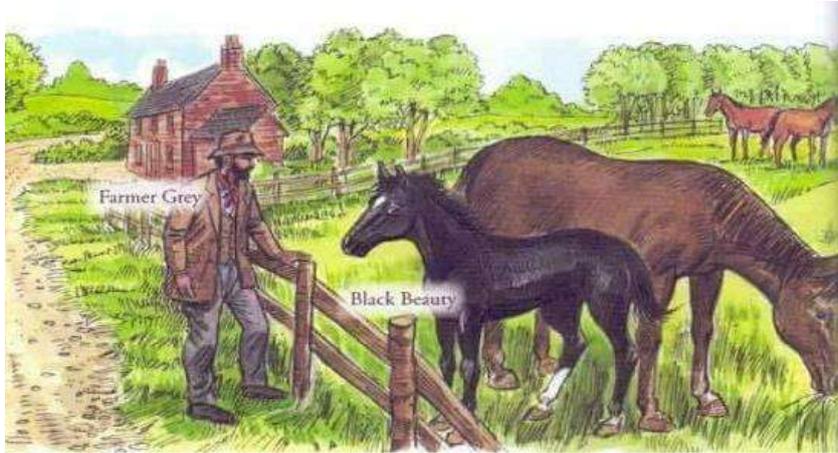


Never Give Up!

في اللغة الإنجليزية

The

Eagle



Black Beauty
Anna Sewell

Anna Sewell

Anna Sewell (1820-1878) was born in England in 1820. When she was a child, she had an accident which badly damaged her legs. After this she couldn't walk, but she learned to drive a horse and a carriage.

ولدت آنا سويل في إنجلترا عام ١٨٢٠ . وعندما كانت طفلة تعرضت لحادثة دمّرت رجليها. وبعد تلك الحادثة لم تستطع ان تمشي ولكنها تعلمت كيف تقود الحصان أو كارتة



She loved the horses that helped her to travel around. She also helped her mother, who wrote children's books.

Anna decided that she wanted to write, too. She wanted people to understand that looking after horses was important, so she wrote a book about the life of a working horse. In 1877, she wrote Black Beauty, and it has become one of the most popular books for Children.

She died in 1878.(Five months after the publication of the novel)

أحببت الخيول التي ساعدتها على السفر. كما ساعدت والدتها التي كتبت كتب الأطفال. قررت آنا أنها تريد الكتابة أيضا. أرادت أن يفهم الناس أن رعاية الخيول مهمة، لذلك كتبت كتابا عن حياة حصان يعمل. في عام ١٨٧٧، كتبت بلاك بيوتي، وأصبحت واحدة من الكتب الأكثر شعبية للأطفال . توفيت عام ١٨٧٨ (بعد خمس شهور من نشرها)

accident	حادث	understand	يفهم
damaged	يتلف	look after	يعتني بـ
carriage	مركبة/حافلة	important	مهم
travel around	يسافر حول	a working horse	حصان عامل
popular	محبوب / مشهور	decide	يقرر

1- Where and When was Anna Sewell born?

⇒ in England in 1820

2- What happened when she was a child?

⇒ she had an accident.

3- Why couldn't she walk after the accident

⇒ Because her legs were badly damaged.

4- What did Anna learn when she could not walk?

⇒ She learned to drive a horse and carriage.

5- Why did Anna love horses?

⇒ Because horses helped her to travel around.

6- How did Anna start to write books?

⇒ She helped her mother, who wrote children's books.

7- Why did Anna decide to write ?

⇒ Because she wanted people to understand that looking after horses is important.

8- What did Anna Sewell write?

⇒ A book about the life of a working horse.

9- When did Anna write "Black Beauty"?

⇒ in 1877.

10- Why do you think that horses were so important in the nineteenth century when Black Beauty was written?

⇒ Because people used them to travel around and to pull their carriages.

Characters

Horses

Duchess : Black Beauty's mother.

Black Beauty : the black horse who tells the story. "He's the narrator".

Merrylegs : A short, fat horse who carries the children at Squire Gordon's.

Ginger : Black Beauty's friend, who has had a difficult past.

People

Farmer Grey : He is Black Beauty's first owner.

Squire Gordon : The second owner who Black Beauty works for.

Mrs Gordon : Squire Gordon's wife. She named "Black beauty".

John Manly : A kind man who is Squire Gordon's helper.

Joe Green : A boy who helps John Manly.

Earl Smythe : A rich man who buys Black Beauty from Squire Gordon.

Lady Smythe : Earl Smythe's wife.

York : Earl Smythe's helper.

Places

Birtwick Park : The country home of Squire Gordon.

Earlshall Park : The country home of Earl Smythe.

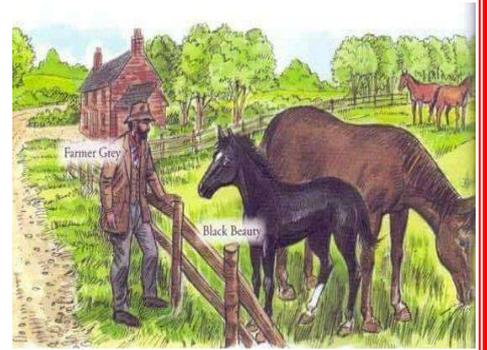


Chapter (1): My early years

accident	حادثة	handsome	وسيم	travel around	يسافر حول
carriage	عربه يجرها الخيل	sell - sold	باع	decide	يقرر
horse	حصان	gentle	لطيف	remember	يتذكر
owner	مالك	advice	نصيحه	wood	خشب
kick	يركل - يرفس	explain	يشرح	important	مهم
bite-bit	يعض	needs	يحتاج	frightened	خائف
look after	يعتنى بـ	stables	اسطبل	different from	مختلف عن
popular	مشهور - محبوب	helper	مساعد	call - ed	يسمى
white foot	قدم بيضاء	jolly	مرح	friends	أصدقاء
coat	شعر/صوف	laugh	يضحك	angry with	غاضب من
along	بطول	face	وجه	behave	يتصرف
farmer	فلاح	bad-tempered	سيء المزاج	ground	الارض
healthy	صحي	cruel	متوحش - عنيف	hurt	يؤذي
kindly	بطيبة - بعطف	machine	آله	refuse - d	يرفض
field	حقل	respect	يحترم	continue	يستمر
perfect	ممتاز	true	حقيقي	thoughtful	مراعي لشعور الاخرين

1- Early life:

The first place that I can remember is a large field with a little wood at the top, where I lived with my mother and some other horses. A small river ran along the bottom of the field. If I stood at the gate to the field, I could see my owner's house next to a road. The owner, Farmer Grey, was a good man. He gave us healthy food and he spoke to us kindly as he spoke to his children.



أول مكان يمكنني أن أتذكره هو حقل كبير مع القليل من الخشب في الأعلى، حيث كنت أعيش مع أمي وبعض الخيول الأخرى. ركض نهر صغير على طول الجزء السفلي من الحقل. إذا وقفت عند بوابة الميدان، كان بإمكانني رؤية منزل مالكي بجوار الطريق. المالك، الفلاح جراي، كان رجلاً طيباً. أعطانا طعاماً صحياً وتحدث إلينا بالترحيب كما تحدث إلى أولاده..

There were other young horses in the field with me, but I was the youngest. I used to run with them, and have great fun. We used to have races, and when the biggest horses got too excited, they kicked and bit the horses next to them.

كانت هناك خيول شابة أخرى في الميدان معي، لكنني كنت الأصغر. اعتدت على الجريان معهم، ولها متعة كبيرة. كان لدينا السباقات، وعندما تثار أكبر الخيول كانوا يركلوا ويضربوا والخيول التي بجانبهم

1- Why do you think that horses were so important in the nineteenth century when Black Beauty was written?

⇒ Because people used them to travel around and to pull their carriages.

2- In what ways are working animals better or worse than machines?

⇒ Working animals are better for the environment.

3- How do you know that Farmer Grey was a kind man?

4- Do you think that Farmer Grey was a good horse owner? Why/Why not ?

⇒ Yes, because he gave his horses healthy food and he spoke to them kindly.

5- Which horse do you like more in Black Beauty? Why?

⇒ I like Black Beauty because he was kind and good.

2- Mother's advice :

One day, when my mother saw what was happening, she called me over to her. "Listen to me. The horses in this field are all good horses, but they are not all like us. I don't think you have ever seen me bite or kick anyone. I hope that you'll grow up to be gentle and good. Never bite or kick, even when you are just playing a game." I have never forgotten my mother's advice.

في يوم من الأيام، عندما رأيت والدتي أن ذلك يحدث، دعوتني إلى أرجع إليها استمع إلي. " الخيول في هذا الحقل جميعهم خيول طيبة. ولكنهم لا يحبوننا. لا أعتقد أنك رأيتني أعض أو أرفس أي شخص. أتمنى أن تتربي أن تكون لطيف وطيب. إياك أن تعض أو تركز (ترفس) حتى ولو كنت تلعب . لم انسى أبدا نصيحة أمي..

I grew into a tall, strong horse with a black coat, with one white foot and a white star on my head. I soon learned how to pull a carriage. Sometimes I pulled the carriage with my mother, and she helped me to learn what to do.

"The harder you work, the kinder people will be to you," my mother explained one day. "I hope you find a good owner. However, there are many kinds of men. Some are as good as our owner, but some are bad. We never know who might buy us. Sometimes people don't understand what a horse needs." I found out that my mother's words were very true.

لقد كبرت كحصان طويل قوي برقبة سوداء و و بقدم واحدة بيضاء ونجمة بيضاء علي رأسي . وبعد ذلك تعلمت كيف اجر العربة. أحيانا، كنت أجز العربة مع أمي وساعدتني كيف أنجز ذلك. " كلما اجتهدت في عملي، كلما أحسن الناس إليكم. " شرحت أمي لي ذلك ذات يوم. " أتمنى لك أن تجد مالك جيد. ومع ذلك يوجد أنواع كثيرة من الرجال. البعض جيد مثل مالكنا ولكن يوجد بعض سيئ. نحن لا نعرف من سوف يشترينا. أحيانا الناس لا تفهم ماذا يحتاج الحصان. ولقد اكتشفت أن كلما أمي كانت صحيحة.

6- Why do you think Black Beauty's mother advised him to work hard ?

⇒ I think because people would be kind to him

7- Why do you think Black Beauty's mother advised him not to bite or kick?

⇒ I think because people would be kind to him.

⇒ I think because she wanted him to be good and gentle.

8- Why do you think Black Beauty's mother advised him to work hard ?

⇒ I think because people would be kind to him

9- Why do you think Black Beauty's mother advised him not to bite or kick?

- ⇒ I think because people would be kind to him.
- ⇒ I think because she wanted him to be good and gentle.

10- Do you think that Black Beauty had a good mother? Why/ Why not?

- ⇒ Yes, because she always advised him and wanted him to be good and gentle.

11- How do you think the advice of Black Beauty's mother can help you in your life?

- ⇒ If I'm good and gentle, people will respect me.

12- What did Black Beauty's mother advise him to do?

- ⇒ She advised him not to bite or kick and to work hard.
- ⇒ Never bite or kick.

13- What do you think of black beauty's mother?

- ⇒ I think she is a good mother.

14- Why do you think some people are unkind to horses?

- ⇒ I think because people don't understand what a horse needs

4- A New owner and a lovely place:

When I was older, Farmer Grey decided to sell me to a new owner. His name was Squire Gordon and he lived in a big house in a place called Birtwick Park. It was a lovely place to live in, with large fields and comfortable stables.

Squire Gordon had a kind helper called John Manly who looked after me, and I soon became good friends with the other horses in the stables. One was a small, fat horse called Merrylegs. He was a jolly, gentle horse who was always making people laugh because of the way he walked. He carried the young children of the family. Another was Ginger, a tall horse with a sad face. Merrylegs told me that Ginger often bit or kicked because people were not nice to her in the past.

"Squire Gordon's children used to bring me apples and nice things to eat," said Merrylegs. "But when they knew that Ginger bit people, they became frightened and now they don't come to visit us horses any more. However, if people are kind to her she'll soon learn to stop biting," he explained.

عندما كبرت ، قرر الفلاح جراي. (مالكننا) أن يبيعنا لمالك جديد. كان أسمه " سكوير جوردون " ويعيش في منزل كبير في مكان يسمى " بيرت ويك بارك ". لقد كان مكان محبوب للحياة فيه. مع الحقول الواسعة والإسطبلات المريحة. كان لدى جوردون مساعد طيب أسمه جون مانلي الذي كان يعتني بي. وبعد فترة قصيرة أصبحت صديق للخيل الأخرى فلي الإسطبلات. واحد منهم كان حصان سمين قصير أسمه ميرى ليجز. كانت حصان لطيف مرح حيث كان يجعل الناس دائما تضحك بسبب طريقة مشيه. كان يحمل طفل صغير من العائلة. وآخر كانت جنجر ، فرس طويل بوجه حزين. أخبرني ميرى ليجز أن جنجر غالبا ما كانت تعض وترفس لان الناس لم تكن لطيفه معها في الماضي. عتاد أطفال سكوير جوردون ان يحضروا لي التفاح وأشياء لطيفة للأكل. " قال ميرى ليجز " ولكن عندما عرفوا (الاطفال) أن جنجر عضت الناس ، أصبحوا خائفين وهم الآن لا يأتوا لزيارتنا (الخيول) مطلقا. ومع ذلك لو أن الناس طيبين معها سوف تتعلم قريبا أن تتوقف عن العض. شرح ميرى ليجز.

15- Why do you think horses like Birtwick Park?

- ⇒ I think because It was a lovely place with large fields and comfortable stables.

16- Do you think John Manly was a kind helper? Why/why not?

⇒ I think because he looked after Black Beauty.

17- Why do you think Merrylegs made people laugh?

⇒ Because of the way he walked.

18- Why do you think Ginger often bit or kicked?

⇒ Because People were not nice to her in the past.

19- Why do you think children stopped visiting horses?

⇒ I think because they knew that Ginger bit and kicked people.

20- When do you think Ginger will learn to stop biting?

⇒ I think when people become kind to her.

21- What do you think people should do with horses that bite or kick?

⇒ I think they should be kind to them.

⇒ I think they should find out the problem and try to solve it.

5- Get a name :

The next day, Squire Gordon took me out around Birtwick Park.

"How is your new horse?" asked his wife when we returned.

"He is a perfect horse!" he said. "What shall we call him?"

"He is very handsome," his wife said. "Why don't we call him Black Beauty?"

"Yes, I like that!" said Squire Gordon. And that is how I got my name.



وعندما رجعنا دار بين سكوير جوردون وزوجته الحوار التالي

الزوجة : كيف حال حصانك الجديد ؟

جوردون : أنه حصان ممتاز. ماذا سوف نسميه ؟

الزوجة : أنه وسيم جدا . لما لا نسميه الجمال الأسود ؟

جوردون : نعم ، أني أحب ذلك. هذا هو كيف حصلت على اسمي

6- Ginger's story:

On some days, I worked with Ginger, pulling carriages. Although Merrylegs said that Ginger was sometimes bad-tempered, I found that she was thoughtful. She always worked hard so that I didn't have to pull the carriage any more than she did. We soon became good friends.

وفي بعض الايام، كنت أعمل مع جنجر في جر العربات وبالرغم من أن ميرري ليجز قال أن جنجر كانت أحيانا سيئة المزاج، وجدتها أنها كانت تراعي شعور الآخرين. كانت دائما تعمل بجد لذلك لم أضطر أن اسحي العربة أكثر مما هي تفعله. وبعد فترة قصيرة أصبحنا أصدقاء جيدين.

One day, when I was working with Ginger, she told me about the people she worked with in the past. None of them was kind and some of them were often cruel. She decided that she did not like people and did not want to do what they asked her to. The problem was that some people hit her hard when she refused to do what they wanted. That was when she started to kick and bite people. Then they wanted to sell, her, and finally she arrived at Squire Gordon's.

و ذات يوم، عندما كنت أعمل مع جنجر أخبرتني عن الناس التي عملت لديهم في الماضي. ولا واحد منهم كان طيب وبعضا منهم كانوا غالبا قساة فقررت ألا تحب الناس وأن لا تفعل ما يطلبوا منها أن تفعله. المشكلة كنت أن بعض الناس كانوا يربونها عندما رفضت أن تفعل ما يريدوه. كان ذلك عندما بدأت أن ترفس وتعض الناس. لهذا قرروا أن يبيعوها. واخيرا وصلت لمنزل السيد سكوير جوردون.

22- Why do you think Squire Gordon and his wife called the horse "Black Beauty" ?

⇒ Because he was a perfect handsome horse.

23- Why do you think that Merrylegs said that Ginger was bad-tempered?

⇒ Because she sometimes bit and kicked.

24- Why didn't Ginger want to do what people had wanted?

⇒ Because they weren't kind to her.

25- Why do you think that people wanted to sell Ginger?

⇒ Because she started to bite and kick them.

26- Why do you think that people were not nice to Ginger in the past?

⇒ Because they thought that horses are machines.

⇒ Because people didn't understand that horses are not machines

27- How do you know that Black Beauty had good owners?

⇒ Farmer Gray gave the horses good food and spoke to them kindly.

⇒ Squire Gordon was also kind. He never hurt his horses.

7- Squire Gordon was different from Ginger's other owners:

However, as time passed, Ginger understood that John and Squire Gordon were different from her other owners. They were always kind and gentle with their horses and she was happy to do what they asked, most of the time.

ومع ذلك، وبمرور الوقت تفهمت جنجر أن جون مانلي وسكوير جوردون كانوا مختلفين عن مالكيها الآخرين. لانهم دائما طيبين ولطفاء مع خيولهم وأنها سعيدة عندما تفعل ما يطلبونه منها في الكثير من الوقت.

Then one day, she saw something that showed her that some people could be good. Squire Gordon was riding her when they passed a man who worked for Squire Gordon. The man was angry with his horse and hit it hard to make it go faster. Squire Gordon did not like this.

"I've never seen a man who was so unkind to a horse," he cried. "No horse will do what you want by hurting it! The people who work for me must understand that a horse is not a machine!"

ثم في يوم من الأيام، رأت شيئا يظهر لها أن بعض الناس يمكن أن يكون طيبين. سكوير جوردون كان يركبها عندما مروا برجلا يعمل لحساب سكوير جوردون. كان الرجل غاضبا من حصانه ويضربه بقسوة لجعله أسرع. سكوير جوردون لم يعجبه هذا. فصاح قائلا " لم أرى قط رجلا كان قاسي على خيل " " ولا حصان سوف يفعل ما تريده بضربه. يجب أن تفهم الناس الذين يعملون لدي أن الخيل ليسوا كالمآكينة.

Ginger now began to respect Squire Gordon. After this, she decided she would not bite or kick people any more.

"She'll be as good as Black Beauty soon," said John. "All she needed was for people to be kind to her."

دأت الآن جنجر أن تحترم سكوير جوردون. وبعد ذلك قررت أنها سوف لن تعض أو ترفس الناس مطلقا. فقال جون "إنها سوف تكون في نفس طيبة البلاك بيوتي " كل ما تحتاجه هو أن تكون الناس طيبة معها."

28- Why should we be kind to animals?

⇒ Because they have feelings. They aren't machines.

29- What did horses need from people?

⇒ to be kind to them.

30- Do you think Squire Gordon was right to be angry with the man who worked for him? Why? Why not?

⇒ Yes, because the man was not kind to his horse.

31- Why was mr Gordon angry with the man who worked for him?

⇒ Because the man was unkind to horses. He hit the horses.

32- How was Squire Gordon different from the other owners?

⇒ He was kind and gentle with their horses.

7- Merrylegs gave the boys a lesson and Black Beauty surprised:

One day, I was surprised when John brought Merrylegs back to the stable and said "Don't do that again, Merrylegs, or you'll be in trouble." "What did you do?" I asked him. I was very surprised because Merrylegs always behaved so well.

"Oh, I didn't do much." said Merrylegs. "I wanted to give the boys a lesson, so I threw them on the ground."

"What?" I said, very surprised. "But you are always so careful with the children,"

"Of course I am," he said. "I would never hurt the girls or the little children. But the older boys need to a lesson sometimes," he continued. "They think that a horse is like a machine, which can continue for hours without a rest. They never think that I can feel tired. So I stopped. When I did not continue, they hit me with a stick. Then I threw them off. They need to learn how a horse feels."

"Why didn't you kick them?" said Ginger.

"No, I would never do that. I threw them off because I knew it would not hurt them. If I kicked the boys, I would be sold to some unkind person who would hit me all the time. We must always remember what a good place we live in."

وفي يوم من الأيام أندهدشت عندما أحضر جون ميرري ليجز إلى الإسطبل قائلا " لا تفعل ذلك مرة أخرى يا ميرري ليجز وإلا سوف تقع في مأزق "

كنت مندهدشا لان ميرري ليجز دائما ما لديه حسن تصرف. ودار الحوار بيننا بلاك بيوتي : ماذا فعلت ؟

ميرري ليجز : أوه، لو أفعل كثيرا. أردت أن ألقن الأولاد درس ، فرميتهم على الأرض بلاك بيوتي : ماذا (مندهدشا) ولكنك دائما ما تكون حريص جدا مع الأطفال.

ميرري ليجز : أنا بالطبع كذلك. لم أذي البنات أو الاطفال الصغار مطلقا ولكن الأولاد الكبار يحتاجون دروس في بعض الاحيان .

وأستمر قائلا : أنهم يعتقدون أن الحصان هو مثل آلة، والتي يمكن أن تستمر لساعات دون راحة. انهم لا يعتقدون أنني يمكن أن أشعر بالتعب. لذلك توقفت. عندما لم أستمر، ضربوني بعصا. ثم ألقيتهم من على ظهري. انهم بحاجة الى معرفة كيف يشعر الحصان.

جنجر : لماذا لم تركلهم ؟

ميري ليجز : لا، لن أفعل ذلك أبدا. ألقيتهم لأنني كنت أعرف أنه لن يضرهم. إذا رfst الأولاد، ربما أباغ لبعض الاشخاص القساة الذين قد يضريني طول الوقت. يجب أن نتذكر دائما يا له مكان جيد نعيش فيه " .

33- Why do you think Merrylegs threw the boys ?

- ⇒ a. Because they hit him with a stick.
- ⇒ b. To give them a lesson.

34- What would happen if Merrylegs did that again?

- ⇒ He would be in trouble. He might be sold to unkind person.

35- What did the boys think about horses?

- ⇒ They thought that they are like a machine.

36- What lesson did Merrylegs want to teach the boys ?

- ⇒ Horses are not like machines

37- Why didn't Merrylegs kick the boys and only threw them ?

- ⇒ Because he would be sold to unkind person and
- ⇒ He didn't want to hurt them.

38- Do you think that Merrylegs was right to behave badly with the children? Why? Why not?

- ⇒ Yes, because the older boys weren't kind to him.
- ⇒ No, because he might hurt them.

39- Why didn't Merrylegs kick the boys and only threw them ?

- ⇒ Because if he kicked the boys, he would be sold to unkind person
- ⇒ He didn't want to hurt them.

40- Do you think that Merrylegs was wrong to throw the older boys off his back? Why?

- ⇒ He was not wrong to do this, because he didn't hurt the boys and he wanted them to learn to be kind to horses.
- ⇒ Yes, because he might hurt the boys.

41- What lesson did Merrylegs want to teach the boys ?

- ⇒ Horses are not like machines. Horses have feelings.

1. Match the items in column (a) with those in column (b):

1- Merrylegs was	a - a white star on his head.
2- Farmer Grey lived in	b - a small fat horse.
3- Squire Gordon was	c - different from other owners.
4- Black Beauty had	d - unkind man.
	f - a house next to a road.

2. Match the items in column (a) with those in column (b):

1 - Black Beauty first lived with	a - Black Beauty
2 - the owner's house was	b - badly
3 - Grey spoke to the horses	c - mother and other horses
4 - The youngest horse was	d - kindly
	e - next to the road

3. Match the items in column (a) with those in column (b):

1 - Black Beauty's mother	a - the kinder people will be
2 - Black Beauty had one	b - when he became older
3 - The harder you work,	c - white foot
4 - Grey decided to sell Beauty	d - advised him not to bite
	e - black foot

4. Match the items in column (a) with those in column (b):

1 - The new owner was	a - Merrylegs and Ginger
2 - Gordon lived in	b - John Manly
3 - Gordon's helper was	c - Farmer Grey
4 - Black Beauty became friends with	d - Birtwick Park
	e - Squire Gordon

5. Match the items in column (a) with those in column (b):

1 - Merrylegs was	a - a horse was a machine
2 - Ginger was	b - a horse was not a machine
3 - Black Beauty	c - small, fat and jolly
4 - Gordon thought	d - was handsome
	e - tall with sad face

6. Match the items in column (a) with those in column (b):

1 - Black Beauty became friends with	a - damaged her legs.
2 - Gordon lived in	b - Merrylegs and Ginger.
3 - Anna had an accident which	c - a kind man.
4 - The harder you work,	d - Birtwick Park .
	f - the kinder people will be.



Chapter (2): Difficult journeys

journey	رحلة	continue	يستمر	brush-ed	يغسل بالفرشاة
put into	يضع في	fall into	سقط في	cigarette	سيجارة
business	أعمال مالية	the river	النهر	uncomfortable	غير مريح
light	خفيف	save-d	انقذ	cough	يسعل- يكح
pull	يجر - يسحب	less	أقل	filled with	ممتلىء بـ
windy	عاصف	gates	بوابات	lantern	فانوس- مصباح
leaves	أوراق شجر	pleased	مسرور	danger	خطر
blow	يهب	reach-ed	يصل	softly	بهدوء- بنعومة- برقة
bridge	جسر - كوبرى	inn	حانة - خمارة	hours	ساعات
flooded	يفيض - يغمر	follow-ed	يتبع	amazing	رائع- مدهش
rest	راحة	collapse-d	ينهار	broken	مكسور
storm	عاصفة	firefighters	رجال المطافي	in the middle	في المنتصف
strong wind	ريح شديدة	put out	يخمد - يطفى	loud	بصوت عالي
the wood	الغابة	fire	نار	close	قريب
suddenly	فجأة	move	يحرك - ينتقل لـ	wrong	خطأ
crash	يصطدم - تصادم	Finally	أخيراً	try- tried	يحاول
cross	يعبر	shout	يصرخ - يصرخ	safe	أمان

1- A storm and a loud crash

On morning, I was put into a small carriage to take Squire Gordon and John on a long journey for the Squire's business. I liked pulling this carriage because it was very light and easy to pull. It was raining when we left and it was also windy, with many leaves blowing across from the road.

في صباح أحد الأيام، تم وضعي في عربة صغيرة لأخذ سكوير جوردون وجون في رحلة طويلة لأعمال سكوير. أنا أحب سحب هذه العربة لأنها كانت خفيفة جداً وسهلة اجر. كان الجو يمطر عندما غادرنا وكان أيضاً عاصف، مع العديد من الأوراق الشجر تهب عبر الطريق.

On our journey we crossed a bridge, and I saw that the water of the river was really high. Many of the fields that we passed were flooded and sometimes I had to pull the carriage through water on the road.

في رحلتنا عبرنا جسراً، ورأيت أن مياه النهر كانت عالية جداً. العديد من الحقول التي مررناها غمرتها المياه وأحياناً اضطررت لسحب العربة من خلال الماء على الطريق.

When we got to the town, I had a good rest while Squire Gordon did his work. We started to go home late in the afternoon, and now there was a real storm. I heard the strong wind blowing through the big trees that we passed.

عندما وصلنا إلى المدينة، كان لي راحة جيدة في حين سكوير جوردون فعل عمله. بدأنا في العودة إلى ديارهم في وقت متأخر من بعد الظهر، والآن كانت هناك عاصفة حقيقية. سمعت الرياح القوية تهب من خلال الأشجار الكبيرة مرت علينا.

"I will be happy when we are out of the wood," said Squire Gordon, and as soon as he said this, a big tree suddenly fell across the road in front of us with a loud CRASH!

"That was close!" said John.

"What can we do?" asked Squire Gordon.

"We can't go forward," said John. "I think that we'll have to go back home a different way."

ودار الحوار التالي بين جوردون وجون
سكوير جوردون : سوف أكون سعيد عندما نخرج من الغابة.
وبمجرد ما قال هذا وفجأة سقطت شجرة كبيرة عبر الطريق أمامنا باصطدام عالي
جون : أنها قريبة جدا.
جوردون : ماذا نستطيع أن نفعل ؟
جون : لا نستطيع التقدم للأمام .
وأعتقد أننا سوف نضطر للرجوع
للمنزل من طريق مختلف

A different road and there's something wrong:

So we went back along a different road. It was longer and when we got to the bridge, it was dark. We started crossing the bridge, but I felt that something was wrong, so I stopped.

"Come on, Beauty!" said Squire Gordon, who tried to make me cross the bridge.

"There's something wrong," said John. "What's the matter, Beauty?"

I knew that the bridge was not safe, but I could not tell him. Then we heard a man shout from the other side of the bridge.

"Stop!" he called. "The bridge is broken in the middle. If you continue, you will fall into the river! "

"I see," John replied. " Thank you, sir! "

" And thank you, Black Beauty! " called Squire Gordon. "You saved us!"

We had to take another road home, but the wind was less strong now. At last we saw the gates of Birtwick Park. I was very pleased to be home and enjoyed my evening food because I was very tired.

لذلك رجعنا على طول طريق مختلف. كان أطول، وعندما نذهب إلى الجسر، كان مظلمًا. بدأنا عبور الجسر، ولكن شعرت أن شيئًا ما كان خطأ، لذلك توقفت.

" هيا، بيوتي!" قال سكوير جوردون، الذي حاول أن يجعلني اعبّر الجسر.
وقال جون "هناك شيء خاطئ". "ما هو الأمر يا بيوتي؟"

كنت أعرف أن الجسر لم يكن آمناً، ولكن لم أستطع أن أقول له. ثم سمعنا رجلاً يصرخ من الجانب الآخر من الجسر
الرجل : توقفوا. الجسر مكسور من المنتصف . لو استمررتم ، سوف تسقطوا في النهر!
جون : أري . شكرا لك سيدي!

سكوير جوردون : وشكرا لك يا بلاك بيوتي! لقد أنقذتنا!
كان علينا أن نأخذ طريقاً آخر للمنزل، ولكن الرياح كانت أقل قوة الآن. في الماضي رأينا أبواب بيرت ويك بارك. كنت
مسرور جداً أن أكون في المنزل وتمتع طعامي مساءً لأنني كنت متعباً جداً.

1. Why do you think Black Beauty liked pulling the carriage?

⇒ Because it was very light and easy to pull

2. Why do you think that Squire would be happy when they were out of the wood?

⇒ Because there was a real storm.

3. Why do you think Black Beauty stopped crossing the bridge ?

⇒ I think because he knew that the bridge was not safe.

⇒ Because he felt that something was wrong.

4. Why do you think Beauty and Gordon had to go home a different way?

5. Why do you think they can't go forward?

⇒ Because a big tree fell across the road in front of them.

6. Why do you think Black Beauty saved them?

⇒ Because the bridge wasn't safe and black beauty didn't cross it.

7. Why do you think the bridge wasn't safe?

⇒ Because the bridge was broken in the middle

8. Why do you think beauty saved them?

⇒ Because the bridge wasn't safe and beauty didn't cross it.

9. Why do you think the journey home after the business journey was hard?

⇒ Because of the bad weather, a big tree fell across the road and the bridge was broken in the middle.

10. Why do you think Squire Gordon thanked Black Beauty?

⇒ Because he saved them.

11. How do you think the man saved them?

⇒ He asked them not to cross the bridge.

12. Do you think Black Beauty saved Gordon and John? Why?

⇒ Yes, because he refused to cross the bridge.

13. Why do you think John didn't drive Beauty over the bridge?

⇒ Because the bridge wasn't safe, it was broken.

14. Why did Squire Gordon try to make Black Beauty cross the bridge?

⇒ because he did not know that the bridge was broken.

15. What do you think would happen if they crossed the bridge?

⇒ They might fall into the river.

16. Do you think black Beauty was right to stop crossing the bridge? Why/why not?

⇒ Yes, because the bridge was broken and it wasn't safe.

17. Do you think Black Beauty always predict danger? Give one example.

⇒ Yes, he refused to cross the bridge which is broken.

18. Why do you think that Beauty couldn't tell Squire that the bridge isn't safe?

⇒ Because Beauty is a horse and the animals can't talk to human.

19. Why was the man shouting on the other side of the bridge?

⇒ Because the bridge was broken in the middle.

20. Why did Beauty enjoy his evening food?

⇒ Because he was very tired.

3- Another journey to visit some friends and there was a fire:

A few weeks later, Squire Gordon and his wife decided to visit some friends who lived about sixty kilometers from my home. They drove Ginger and me about thirty-five kilometers on the first day. We stopped often before we reached the town where we would stay for the night at an inn. Ginger and I were fed and brushed. We were ready to go to sleep when another horse arrived. His young rider smoked a cigarette while his horse brushed.

وبعد بضعة أسابيع، قرر سكوير جوردون وزوجته زيارة بعض الأصدقاء الذين عاشوا حوالي ستين كيلومترا من بيتي. قادوا جنجر وأنا حوالي خمسة وثلاثين كيلومترا في اليوم الأول. توقفنا في كثير من الأحيان قبل أن نصل إلى المدينة حيث سنبقى لليلة في فندق (حان). أطعموني أنا وجنجر ونظفونا. كنا على استعداد للذهاب إلى النوم عندما وصل حصان آخر. راكبه الشاب يدخن سيجارة في حين يحمم حصانه.

I don't know how long I slept, or what time it was when I woke up. I felt uncomfortable although I did not know why. I heard Ginger coughing and I saw that the air was filled with smoke. Then I knew that there was a fire.

A man appeared with a lantern and tried to take the horses outside. We could see that he was worried and this frightened us even more. None of us wanted to

leave although we knew we were in danger. What would happen to us? We did not want to go anywhere. Then John arrived.

لا أعرف كم من الوقت كنت أنام، أو ماذا كان الوقت عندما استيقظت. شعرت بعدم الارتياح على الرغم من أنني لم أكن أعرف لماذا. سمعت جنجر تسعل ورأيت أن الهواء مليء بالدخان. ثم عرفت أن هناك حريق. ظهر رجل مع فانوس وحاول أن يأخذ الخيول خارجا. يمكننا أن نرى أنه كان قلقا وهذا أخافنا أكثر من ذلك. لم يكن أحد منا يريد المغادرة رغم أننا كنا نعرف أننا في خطر. ماذا سيحدث لنا؟ لم نكن نريد الذهاب إلى أي مكان. ثم وصل جون.

4- John saved the horses

Come on, my beautiful horses, wake up please. It's time to go." He spoke softly and was so gentle with me that I stopped feeling frightened. I slowly followed him out of the building and away from the fire. When I saw that I was safe, I called out for the other horses to leave. Ginger later told me that I had saved her.

"هيا يا خيولي الجميلة من فضلكم أمشوا، حان وقت الذهاب".

تكلم بهدوء وكان لطيف جدا معي لدرجة أنني توقفت عن الشعور بالخوف. تابعته ببطء إلى خارج المبنى وبعيدا عن النار. عندما رأيت أنني آمن، دعوت للخيول الأخرى أن تغادر. جنجر قالت لي في وقت لاحق أن كنت قد أنقذتها.

By now the fire was bigger and, just as John led Ginger away from the fire, the building collapsed. Finally, some firefighters arrived to try to put out the fire. After many hours, the fire was no more.

When we arrived at the house of Squire Gordon's friends the next evening, everyone was talking to John.

"It is one of the hardest things in the world to move horses when there is a fire," said Squire Gordon's friend. "What you did to help them was amazing."

حتى الآن كان الحريق أكبر، وبمجرد ما قاد جون جنجر بعيدا عن الحريق حتى انهار المبنى. وأخيرا، وصل بعض رجال الاطفاء لمحاولة اخماد الحريق. بعد ساعات عديدة، كان الحريق لم أطفئ. عندما وصلنا إلى منزل أصدقاء سكوير جوردون في المساء التالي، كان الجميع يتحدث مع جون. وقال صديق جوردون " انها واحدة من اصعب الامور في العالم لنقل الخيول عندما يكون هناك حريق ". "ما فعلته لمساعدتهم كان مذهلا".

21. Why do you think that John was able to take the horses from the burning stables?

⇒ I think because he was quiet and gentle. That made them stop feeling frightened.

22. When do you think people can't control horses ?

⇒ I think when horses are frightened

23. For what reasons do you think that moving horses when there is a fire is very hard?

24. Why do you think that moving horses when there is a fire is very hard?

⇒ because horses are strong and fast. We can't control horses when there is a fire.

25. Is it hard to move horses when there was a fire? Why?

⇒ Yes, because horses are strong and fast.

26. Why do you think that horses wanted to stay in the stables although there was a fire?

⇒ I think they were afraid and worried. They didn't where they would go.

27. Why do you think it's dangerous to smoke a cigarette in a stable?

⇒ Because this may causes a fire.

28. What do you think the best behaviour from John Manly ? Why ?

⇒ When he saved horses from the fire because it's hard to control horses when there is afire.

29. Why do you think beauty felt uncomfortable in the inn stable?

⇒ Because of the smoke of the fire.

30. Why do you think John was quite and gentle with the horses when he wanted them to leave the stables?

⇒ To control them.

31. Why do you think the second journey was difficult?

⇒ I think because there was a fire in the inn stables.

32. Why do you think the man with lantern couldn't save the horses?

⇒ I think because he was afraid and worried.

33. Wha do you think of the young rider who smokes a cigarette?

⇒ I think he was careless.

34. Why did Black Beauty call out for the horses when there was a fire?

⇒ He called the horses to leave the burning building. They are in danger.

35. Why do you think John asked Blak Beauty to leave the stable?

⇒ Because he was in danger.

36. How do you think Black Beauty saved Ginger's life?

⇒ He called out for her to leave the burning stable.

1. Match the items in column (a) with those in column (b):

1- The bridge was	a - when there was a fire
2- Black Beauty enjoyed	b - broken
3- The carriage was	c - his evening food.
4- Ginger was coughing	d - high and flooded.
	f - light and easy to pull.

3. Match the items in column (a) with those in column (b):

1 - The wood was	a - softly with Beauty
2 - John spoke	b - dark
3 - When Beauty arrived home,	c - were fed and brushed
4 - Ginger and Beauty	d - he was very tired
	e - light

4. Match the items in column (a) with those in column (b):

1. John Manly	a. saved Squire Gordon from the broken bridge
2. Black Beauty	b. hit the horses hard.
3. Ginger	c. began to respect Squire Gordon.
4. Merrylegs	d. was Squire Gordon's helper.
	e. wanted to teach the boys a lesson about horses.

5. Match the items in column (a) with those in column (b):

1. Squire Gordon's friends	a. didn't listen to Black Beauty when he called out.
2. The rider in the stable	b. walked out of the stable when Black Beauty called her.
3. Ginger	c. smoked a cigarette and caused a fire.
4. Mrs Gordon	d. were amazed because John saved the horses.
	e. went with Squire Gordon to visit some friends.

6. Match the items in column (a) with those in column (b):

1. Squire Gordon's friend	a. saved Squire Gordon from the broken bridge.
2. Ginger	b. was sad because John didn't save the horses.
3. Black Beauty	c. could save the horses from the burning stable.
4. John Manly	d. was amazed because John saved the horses.
	e. walked out of the stable when Beauty called out for the other horses.

7. Match the items in column (a) with those in column (b):

1. Ginger	a. He wanted to make Black Beauty cross the bridge.
2. Black Beauty	b. They put out the fire at the burning stables.
3. Firefighters	c. He wanted to feed Black Beauty.
4. Squire Gordon	d. called out for the other horses to leave the inn
	e. was coughing when the air was filled with smoke at the inn.



Chapter (3): Joe Green's lesson

return-ed	يعود	warm	دافئ	explain-ed	يشرح
helper	مساعد	dangerous	خطير	the police	الشرطة
need	يحتاج	blanket	بطانية	came over	ينتهي
hard worker	عامل مجد لعمله	alone	بمفرده	mistakes	أخطاء
start-ed	يبدأ	ached	آلم	climate	مناخ
look-ed after	يعتني بـ	difficult	صعب	owners	أصحاب - ملاك
parent	والد	cover-ed	يغطي	The railway station	محطة السكة الحديد
sweep-swept	يكنس	Luckily	لحسن الحظ	best	الأفضل
bring-brought	يحضر	unhappy	تعييس	hills	تلال
practice-d	يتدرب- يتمرن	angry with	غاضب من	quiet	هادئ
sing - sang	يغني	bars	قضبان	arrive at	يصل لـ
stand- stood	يقف	wheels	عجلات	knock-ed	يطرق
lantern	فانوس- مصباح	whip	سوط	loudly	بصوت عالي
note	ملاحظة	rudely	بوقاحة	at once	فوراً - في الحال
inn	حانة - خمارة	deal with	يتعامل مع	realise-d	تدرك
village	قرية	neighbour	جار	difficulties	صعوبات
problem	مشكلة	describe	يصف	change	تغيرات

A new helper called Joe Green :

When we returned to Birtwick Park, we heard that John was to have a new helper. His name was Joe Green and he was fourteen years old.

"Are you sure you don't need someone who is older than this?" asked Squire Gordon. "No, Sir," said John. "Joe is small, but he wants to learn and he is a hard worker. I was the same age when I started here. I had no family, but you looked after me as well as any parent. Now I live here with a good job and a good living. It is only right that I do the same to this new boy, Joe Green."

عندما عدنا إلى بيرتويك بارك، سمعنا أن جون كان لديه مساعد جديد. وكان اسمه جوي جرين وكان عمره أربعة عشر عاماً. "هل أنت متأكد أنك لا تحتاج شخص أكبر من هذا؟" سأل سكوير غوردون.

"لا، يا سيدي"، قال جون. "جوي صغير، لكنه يريد أن يتعلم وهو مجتهد. كنت نفس العمر عندما بدأت هنا. لم يكن لدي عائلة، ولكنك اعتنيت بي كأبي والد. الآن أعيش هنا مع عمل جيد وحياة جيدة. ومن الصواب أن أفعل الشيء نفسه بالنسبة لهذا الولد الجديد، جو جرين."

1. Why do you think John was grateful to Squire Gordon?

⇒ Because Squire Gordon looked after him when he was young.

2. Do you think that John was kind to Joe? Why/why not?

⇒ Yes, because he wanted to look after him He wanted him to have a good job and a good living .

3. Do you think that fourteen is too young to learn to do a job? Why/Why not?

⇒ No, because boys in that age like learning new things.

4. Do you think John was right to have a helper who is only fourteen? Why/why not?

⇒ Yes, because boys in that age like learning new things.

⇒ Yes, because Joe is a hard worker and wanted to learn new things.

Mrs. Gordon is ill :

In the next few weeks, Joe learned to sweep the floor, bring in the food and wash the carriages. He was too small to brush Ginger or me, so he practised on Merrylegs. He was a happy boy who was always singing.

However, it was not always a happy time. One day, something happened that stopped Joe singing for some time.

John woke me up one morning when it was still dark. Almost before I could open my eyes, he was riding me past the house.

"Ride as fast as you can!" called Squire Gordon, who was standing by the door with a lantern in his hand. " Take this note to Dr. White. My wife is very ill ! when you find the doctor, Black Beauty can rest at the inn."

في الأسابيع القليلة المقبلة، تعلم جوى كنس الأرض، وجلب الطعام وغسل العربات. كان صغير جدا لتنظيف جنجر أو تنظيفي، لذلك تدرب على ميرري ليجز. كان صبي سعيدا الذي يغني دائما. ومع ذلك، لم يكن دائما وقت سعيد. ذات يوم، حدث شيء ما توقف جوى الغناء لبعض الوقت. أيقظني جون في ذات صباح عندما كان لا يزال مظلمًا. تقريبا قبل أن أتمكن من فتح عيني، كان يركبني ماراً بالمنزل. "أركب بأسرع ما يمكن!" ودعا سكوير غوردون، الذي كان يقف بجانب الباب مع فانوس في يده. "خذ هذه المذكرة إلى الدكتور وايت. زوجتي مريضة جدا! عندما تجد الطبيب، بلاك بيوتي يمكن أن يستريح في نزل."

" Yes, sir!" cried John and he rode me as quickly as he could through the village and out along the river. We went through another village, through a dark wood, up and down hills, until at last we came to town. Everything was quiet and everyone was sleeping. Finally, we arrived at Dr. White's house.

John knocked loudly on the doctor's door.

" Mrs. Gordon is very ill. You must come now," said John passing the doctor the note.

"نعم، يا سيدي!" صاح جون وركبني بأسرع ما يمكن من خلال القرية وعلى طول النهر. ذهبنا من خلال قرية أخرى، من خلال الخشب الداكن، صعودا وهبوطا التلال، حتى في النهاية وصلنا إلى المدينة. كل شيء كان هادئا وكان الجميع ينامون. وأخيرا، وصلنا إلى منزل الدكتور وايت. طرق جون بصوت عال على باب الطبيب. "السيدة جوردون مريضة جدا. يجب أن تأتي الآن"، وقال جون ممرا المذكرة للطبيب.

I will come at once, but I have a problem. My son has taken my horse and I don't have another. Can I ride yours?"

"He is very hot because he has run all the way here. But I think it is the only way to save Mrs. Gordon. I will stay here and you can ride Black Beauty."

It is hard for me to describe the journey back. The doctor was heavier than John and not such a good rider. I had almost no energy when we finally arrived at Birtwick Park. The doctor ran into the house, and young Joe took me inside. All my hair was wet and I felt so hot.

"سوف أتي فوراً ، ولكن لدي مشكلة. أخذ ابني الحصان وليس لدي آخر. يمكنني ركوب حصانك؟ " وقال "انه حار جدا لأنه كان يمر على طول الطريق هنا. ولكن أعتقد أن هذه هي الطريقة الوحيدة لإنقاذ السيدة جوردون. سأبقى هنا ويمكنك ركوب بلاك بيوتي"

من الصعب بالنسبة لي أن أصف الرحلة الرجوع. كان الطبيب أثقل من جون وليس مثله فارس جيد. لم يكن لدي أي طاقة تقريبا عندما وصلنا أخيرا إلى بيرتويك بارك. دخل الطبيب إلى المنزل، وأخذني جوي إلى الداخل. كل شعري كان رطبا وشعرت بسخونة جدا.

Poor Joe didn't know what to do:

Poor Joe was young and he didn't know what to do. A horse who has just run a long way needs to stay warm and drink warm water. It is a dangerous time for the horse, so someone should stay and watch him, too. Joe didn't do this. He didn't put a warm blanket on me because I was hot, and then he gave me cold water to drink, before he went away and left me alone in the stable.

كان جوي المسكين صغير ولا يعرف ماذا يفعل. الحصان الذي يقطع طريقا طويلا يحتاج إلى البقاء دافئا وشرب الماء الدافئ. هو وقت خطير للحصان، لذلك يجب على شخص البقاء ومشاهدته أيضا. لم يفعل جوي هذا. لم يضع بطانية دافئة علي لأنني كنت ساخنا، ثم أعطاني الماء البارد للشرب، قبل أن يذهب بعيدا وتركني وحيدا في الاسطبل.

I began to feel very cold. All my body ached. I lay down and tried to sleep. When I woke up, John was at my side. It was difficult for me to breathe. He covered me with blankets and gave me some hot water. He then stayed with me night and day. Squire Gordon also came to see me.

"Poor Black Beauty! You saved my wife's life, and now you are as ill as she was." Although I was ill, I was happy to hear that she was well again.

بدأت أشعر ببرودة شديدة. كل جسدي مؤلم. رقدت وحاولت النوم. وعندما استيقظت، كان جون في جانبي. كان من الصعب بالنسبة لي أن يتنفس. غطاني ببطانيات وأعطاني بعض الماء الساخن. ثم بقي معي ليلا ونهارا. سكوير جوردون جاء أيضا لرؤيتي.

"بلاك بيوتي المسكين! لقد قمت بحفظ حياة زوجتي، والآن كنت مريضا كما كانت. "على الرغم من أنني مريض، كنت سعيدا لسماع ذلك إنها كانت جيدة مرة أخرى.

Young Joe Green was very unhappy. He knew that I was ill because he did the wrong thing that night. Luckily, I became well again in a few days, but I knew that John was angry with Joe.

كان الشاب جو جرين غير راض للغاية. كان يعلم أنني مريض لأنه فعل الشيء الخطأ في تلك الليلة. لحسن الحظ، لقد أصبحت جيدا مرة أخرى في غضون أيام قليلة، ولكن كنت أعرف أن جون كان غاضبا من جوي

5. Why do you think Black Beauty was hot when they arrived at Dr White's ?
⇒ Because he had run all the way.
6. Why do you think the doctor rode Black Beauty instead of his own horse ?
⇒ Because his son had taken his horse.
7. Why did Squire Gordon ask John to ride fast ?
⇒ Because his wife was ill and to give Dr White a note.
8. Why did Joe Green have to brush Merrylegs, but not the other horses?
⇒ Because he was too small to brush other horses.
9. In your opinion, What does a horse who has just run a long way need ?
⇒ He needs to stay warm and drink warm water.
10. What did Joe do wrong ?
⇒ He didn't cover Beauty with a blanket and gave him cold water.
11. Why do you think Joe caused Black Beauty's illness?
⇒ Because he did wrong things. He didn't cover Beauty with a blanket and gave him cold water.
12. Joe didn't know how to deal with black beauty. What do you think of this?
⇒ I think this is usual because he was too young and had no experience with horses.
13. Do you think John was a kind helper? Why/Why not?
⇒ Yes, because he stayed with Black Beauty and looked after him when he was ill
14. Why was John angry with Joe ?
15. Why was Joe very unhappy?
⇒ Because he did the wrong things with Beauty. He made Beauty ill.
16. Was John right to be angry with Joe Green after Black Beauty became ill?
Why? Why not?
17. Do you think Joe was responsible for making beauty sick? How?
⇒ Yes, because he did wrong things and gave Black Beauty cold water.
⇒ No, because Joe was young and didn't know what to do.
18. If you were Joe, what would you do with your horse when he is tired and wet after a long journey?
⇒ I would stay and watch him.
⇒ I would give him warm water and put a warm blanket on him.

19. What do you think was written on the note to Dr white?

⇒ "Come quickly, my wife is very ill."

20. Do you think Joe's young age caused Black Beauty's illness? Why/why not?

⇒ Yes, because he was too young and he didn't know what to do.

21. What did Joe do wrong ?

⇒ He didn't cover Beauty with a blanket and gave him cold water.

22. Why was the journey back for Black Beauty hard?

⇒ because the doctor was heavier and he was a bad driver.

23. If you were a horse , would you like the doctor to be your rider? Why/Why not?

⇒ No, because he was heavier and he was a bad driver.

24. Why did John ride Black Beauty to another village during the night?

⇒ To bring Dr White as Mrs Gordon was very ill.

Joe was singing happily again:

A few weeks later, Joe took me out to take a message to a neighbor . On the way home, we passed a carriage that was full of heavy metal bars. It was taking them to a nearby factory. The wheels of the carriage couldn't move because the carriage was so heavy and there was thick mud on the road. Two horses were trying to pull the carriage, but they couldn't. The driver was hitting them hard with a whip.

And Joe talked to the driver.

Joe : Stop, please. The wheels will not move in this mud.

The driver(rudely) : Be quiet.

Joe :I can help you take some of the metal from the carriage, then it will move.

The driver: " Go away. I know what I am doing.

He continued to hit the horses. Joe quickly rode me to the factory and found the manager. Joe told him what the man was doing.

The manager : Thank you, Joe. I will deal with the man, will you tell the police what you saw?"

Joe: Yes, I will.

بعد مرور عدة أسابيع، أخذني جوي ليأخذ رسالة إلى أحد الجيران . وفي طريق العودة. مررنا بعربة كانت مملوءة من القضبان (أسياخ) المعدنية. كانت تحملهم إلى أقرب مصنع. لم تستطع عجلات العربة أن تتحرك لان العربة كانت ثقيلة جدا وكان يوجد طين سميك على الطريق . حصانين كانوا يحاولوا ان يجروا العربة ولكنهم لم يستطيعوا. فكان السائق يضربهم بعنف بسوط فتحدث إليه جوي

جوي: توقف من فضلك, العجلات لن تتحرك في هذا الطين.

السائق (بوقاحة) : التزم الهدوء .

جوي: سوف أساعدك بأخذ بعض المعادن من العرببة وبعدها سوف تتحرك

السائق : أبتعد عني . فأنا أعرف ما أفعله.

واستمر في ضرب الخيول. ركبني جوي بسرعة إلى المصنع ووجد المدير . وأخبر جوي المدير ما فعله الرجل.

المدير : شكرا لك يا جوي. سوف أتعامل مع الرجل . هل سوف تتصل بالشرطة وتخبرهم بما رأيت ؟

جوي : نعم سأفعل.

25. Why couldn't the carriage move ?

⇒ Because the metal bars were so heavy.

⇒ There was thick mud on the road.

26. Why was the driver hitting the horses ?

⇒ Because they couldn't pull the carriage.

27. Why do you think that the driver of the carriage near the factory was rude to Joe?

⇒ I think because he didn't accept the advice or help from a young boy.

28. What kind of man do you think the carriage driver was?

⇒ I think he was rude and unkind.

29. Do you think the driver of the carriage was kind to horses? Why/Why not?

⇒ No, because he hit the horses hard with a whip.

30. Do you think that people must hit animals? Why/Why not?

⇒ No, because animals have feelings. They aren't machines.

31. Do you think the driver of the carriage was right to hit the horses with a whip?

⇒ No, because horses have feelings.

⇒ No, because horses aren't machines.

New Changes

The manager went to find the carriage with the metal and Joe went home. He told John what happened.

John : You did the right thing.

We heard later that the police asked Joe about what he had seen. Joe explained very well and when the police saw the poor horses. They sent the driver to prison for two or three months.

I was happy to see the change that came over Joe. He learned from his mistakes to become a very good worker. John was now very pleased with him.

ذهب المدير للعثور على العربية التي بها المعدن وذهب جوى إلى المنزل. أخبر جون ما حدث.
جون: لقد فعلت الشيء الصحيح.

سمعنا لاحقاً أن الشرطة سألت جوى عما شاهده. وأوضح جوى بشكل جيد جداً وعندما رأت الشرطة الخيول المسكينة. أرسلوا السائق إلى السجن لمدة شهرين أو ثلاثة أشهر. كنت سعيداً لرؤية التغيير الذي حدث على جوى. تعلم من أخطائه أن يصبح عاملاً جيداً. كان جون الآن مسروراً جداً به.

John : You look taller than you did last week!"

Soon Joe was singing happily again every day.

However, Mrs. Gordon became ill again in the years that followed. The doctor said that she should live in a warmer climate. We heard that Squire and Mrs. Gordon were going to leave England. Everybody was very sad.

جون: تبدو أطول مما كنت في الأسبوع الماضي.
قريباً كان جوي يغني بسعادة مرة أخرى كل يوم. ومع ذلك، فقد أصيبت السيدة جوردون مرة أخرى في السنوات التالية. وقال الطبيب إنها يجب أن تعيش في مناخ أكثر دفئاً. سمعنا أن سكوير والسيدة جوردون سيغادران إنجلترا. الجميع كان حزينا جداً.

All Squire Gordon's horses were sold to new owners. Ginger and I were the last horses to leave Birtwick Park and one morning, We took Squire Gordon and his wife to the railway station. We never saw them again.

Ginger and I found out that we were going to live at Earlshall Park. The home of a rich Earl called Smythe. John took us there the next day and told the new helper, a man called York, that we were the best horses they could have. Then John left, too. I felt very sad to see him going. I didn't realize that my new home with Earl and lady Smythe would bring new difficulties for Ginger and me.

تم بيع جميع الخيول سكوير جوردون لأصحابها الجدد. كانت جنجر وأنا آخر الخيول لمغادرة بيرت ويك بارك وصباح واحد، أخذنا سكوير جوردون وزوجته إلى محطة السكك الحديدية. لم نرهم مرة أخرى. لقد اكتشفت جنجر أننا سنعيش في إيرل شال بارك. صاحبة منزل إيرل الغنية تسمى سميث. أخذنا جون في اليوم التالي هناك وأخبر مساعد جديد، رجل يسمى يورك. حيث كنا أفضل خيول يمتلكوها. وبعدها غارد جون أيضاً. فقد حزنت أن أراه يذهب. لم أدرك أن منزلي الجديد مع إيرل والسيدة سميث سوف يجلب صعوبات كثيرة لي ولجنجر.

32. Why do you think John said that Joe Green looked taller?

⇒ Because he learned from his mistakes and became a good worker.

33. Why do you think Squire Gordon sold his horses?

⇒ Because he had to leave England

⇒ Because his wife was very ill and needed to live in a warmer place.

34. If you were a horse, would you like to be the kind of Ginger ? Why/ Why not?

⇒ No, because she bit and kicked people.

35. Did you like the story of Black Beauty?

⇒ Yes, because it's interesting and teaches us a lot of lessons.

36. Which horse do you like most in "Black Beauty"? Why ?

⇒ I like Black Beauty because he is good and gentle.

37. Why do you think England wasn't a good place for Mrs Gordon to live?

38. Why do you think the doctor advised Mrs Gordon to leave England?

⇒ Because England is cold and she needed a warm place.

39. How did you know that squire Gordon was worried about his wife?

⇒ When the doctor said that she should move to a warmer place, he sold his horses and decided to leave England.

40. Why do you think the driver of the carriage was sent to prison?

⇒ Because he hit the horses hard.

41. If you were Black Beauty, would you be happy to leave Birtwick Park? Why/Why not?

⇒ No, because it was a lovely place with comfortable places.

1. Match the items in column (a) with those in column (b):

1. Squire Gordon and Mrs Gordon	a. rode Black Beauty instead of his own horse.
2. Joe Green	b. was only fifteen.
3. John Manly	c. had to move to a warmer climate.
4. Dr White	d. He learned to sweep the floor and wash the carriages.
	e. stayed with Black Beauty until he became better.

2. Match the items in column (a) with those in column (b):

1. Black Beauty	a. asked the driver to stop hitting the horses.
2. Joe Green	b. Earl Smythe's helper.
3. York	c. He was hitting the horses with a whip.
4. The carriage driver	d. became very hot and tired after saving Mrs Gordon.
	e. asked the driver to stop feeding the horses.

3. Match the items in column (a) with those in column (b):

1. Joe Green	a. was angry with Joe for taking care of Black Beauty.
2. John Manly	b. reported the rude driver to the police.
3. The factory driver	c. had to move to a warmer climate.
4. Mrs Gordon	d. took a note to Dr White.
	e. hit the horses with a whip.

4. Match the items in column (a) with those in column (b):

1. Green	a. were Black Beauty's new owners.
2. John Manly	b. stayed with Black Beauty until he became better.
3. Squire Gordon and Mrs Gordon	c. hit the horses near the factory
4. Earl and lady Smythe	d. stopped singing after Black Beauty became ill.
	e. had to leave England.

1- What you should do to help your parents at home

Our parents are the dearest people in our life . They look after us very well. They provide us with all our needs so we should help our parents at home. We should help in the kitchen We should tidy our rooms. We should sweep the floors. We should wash the dishes. We should make our beds. Finally I love my parents very much.

At home, I usually help my mother do housework. I clean the curtains and sometimes do the vegetables. I sometimes go to the shops for my mother. I learn how to iron my own clothes, tidy my bedroom and water the flowers. Learning to depend on yourself doing many jobs will make you active and helpful

2- "Why Egypt is a good place to visit"

We all agree that Egypt is a very good place to visit .Tourists visit Egypt from all over the world to enjoy our ancient monuments and to enjoy our fine weather. Tourists can visit the Egyptian Museum in Cairo and see its treasures. They can go to the citadel and Cairo Tower. They also go to Giza to see the pyramids and the sphinx. They go to Aswan to see the High Dam and they visit Luxor to enjoy its wonderful historic places such as the valley of the kings. Egypt also enjoys the most fantastic resorts in Alexandria and in Sharm El-Shiekh . The people are kind. The prices are not so expensive. There are a lot of hotels and restaurants where you can enjoy your meals.

3- "Reading as a useful hobby" "Your favourite hobby"

We all agree that doing a hobby is very enjoyable for us. It gives us the chance to feel happy. It helps us to spend our free time in a useful way. As for me my favourite hobby is reading. I like reading stories very much. I usually go to the school library to borrow stories. I usually read at home . I read in my free time. It gives me a lot of information. It feeds my mind. It makes me know a lot of things. Reading makes people travel to different places while they are at home. It also helps them widen their minds and supplies them with a lot of knowledge.I love it very much

4-Your favourite Egyptian writer"

I like reading very much. It is one of my favourite hobbies. I like reading stories in Arabic. I enjoy reading them very much. I like reading to many writers but Naguib Mahfouz is my favourite Egyptian writer. He is the most famous Egyptian writer. He was born in Cairo. He wrote many amazing novels. Some of these novels turned into films, People liked his stories so much. His writings were international. He won the Nobel Prize. He described the life in Egypt very well. He lived for about more than 80 years. He was a great writer. We are proud of him. I'd like to be a famous writer like him.

5- "Sham el-Nessim in Egypt"

In Egypt, Sham el-Nessim was first held to celebrate the start of spring nearly 4,000 years ago. Sham el-Nessim means smelling the breeze and it is celebrated all over Egypt On a Monday in April. Traditionally, boiled eggs are eaten for breakfast. Eggs are decorated in bright colours by children. They usually paint the eggs in the morning and leave them in the sun to dry. Another traditional food which is eaten on this day is feseekh. This tradition also dates back to ancient Egyptian times. When people had more fresh fish than they could eat, they put salt on it to preserve it. In fact, it is a good day for families to spend along the Nile and children play.

6- "STEM schools"

Today, knowing how to use modern technology is essential because people use it every day in schools, at home and at work. People with different jobs need to understand how to use the latest technology. STEM schools are special schools which focus on developing students' ability in science, technology, engineering and maths. STEM schools lessons are different to those in usual schools. Teachers encourage students to do projects where they work together to solve problems. STEM school students must be hardworking. All their lessons are in English, so that they can understand and use scientific texts from around the world while they study.

7-Modern technology

Modern technology has changed life into modern and easy one. Although new inventions provided people with everything at a twinkle of an eye, they have made people lazy. Spending long hours in front of smartphones, computers or TVs is very tiring. Some children waste much time playing games, others do not do their homework. They might find sleeping at night difficult. Children must practise sports rather than waste too many hours on games and internet. They must relax and finish their homework first. So technology is a mixed blessing.

8- "A job I would like to do"

I have a lot of dreams to achieve in the future . one of these dreams is that I would like to be a writer when I finish university. In fact it is a difficult job but I have some skills to do it. I like reading books by great Arabic and English writers. I usually go to the library in my free time. I also take part in writing competitions at school. I have already won a prize for writing a short story. My head is always full of ideas for many stories. I hope to have many readers and be successful writer.

www.darsenglizy.com

9- "Someone who is genius"

Mahmoud Wael is an Egyptian genius child. When he was three, he was able to give all answers to the sums. TV channels heard about his amazing skills. They invited him to be on their shows. When he was seven, the American University in Egypt helped him to study maths at a high level. One of the biggest computer software business in the world became interested in Mahmoud because he was so intelligent. He studied computer programming and got several awards. He was then able to teach university graduates about computer programming. He was only eleven!

10- A great film you watched yesterday.

I like watching films very much. I usually go to the cinema to watch them. I also watch them on TV. Yesterday I watched a very interesting film. It was called " Hancock" . it is an American film. It was about a man who has a great power to do amazing things. At first he used it to hurt people but then someone asked him to use his power to help people. He saved a lot of people from danger. He could fly and carry very heavy things. He was a hero for the people . I enjoyed the film very much. It was very exciting.

11- "Robots in our lives"

Scientists have used robots for a long time. Some robots dive under water to study the sea. Others are sent inside volcanoes to study dangerous places. Personal robots are designed to help people with jobs at home. They include robot vacuum cleaners to clean floors and lawn mowers to cut the grass in parks and gardens. Some robots are designed to have friendly faces so that children will think they are toys. These robots are very useful in hospitals where they can entertain children and help them to feel better.

12- "My favourite sport"

We all agree that sport is very important in our life. It helps us to be fit and makes our body strong. It is also great fun. As for me I love sport very much. My favourite sport is football. I play it in my free time. I play it with my friends. I play it in the club. I 'm in my school team. I like scoring goals very much. My favourite player is Mohamed Salah. He plays for Liverpool. He is the best player in Africa. He is very fast. My favourite team is Ahly . I like watching football matches on TV. I'd like to be a famous player one day.

13- "A footballer I like most"

We can't deny that Mohamed Salah is the best Egyptian football player. He is one of the best players in the world. He is the best player in Africa. He is quite tall . He is very fast. He plays for Liverpool and he plays for Egypt , too. He is good at scoring goals. He is very kind. He helps many charities in Egypt. He gives money to poor

people. He has many prizes. He likes talking to his fans. He has good skills , I enjoy watching him playing. All of us love him. I'd like to be like him one day. We are proud of him.

14- "An interesting place"

Egypt has a lot of interesting places. I like many places in Egypt. I like visiting Ras El-Bar. It is in Damietta. It is a very beautiful resort. Many people like visiting it . It has very beautiful views of the Nile and the Sea. I go there in the summer. I go with my family. We stay in a flat by the sea. I enjoy swimming and playing there. I like riding my bike there. I like going to the circus there with my family. I sometimes go to the cinema there. I also enjoy shopping there. There are a lot of things to do and see there. I love it very much.

15- An exciting book you've read.

I read a story that I like most. It is about "Black Beauty ". It is a special horse. Black Beauty tells his life story. His mother taught him to be a good horse. Farmer Grey, his owner, was kind and Black Beauty was happy. Farmer Grey sold him to Squire Gordon who was very kind also. Unfortunately, Squire Gordon moved abroad and Black Beauty was sold to different people, Some of them were unkind. To conclude, Black Beauty had many adventures before he finally found a good home again.

16. The history of the Olympic Games

The Olympic Games, an international sports Festival which takes place every four years, are particularly famous for athletics. But they also include individual sports, like swimming and team sports, like football and hockey. For athletes everywhere, taking part in the Games is usually the highlight of their career. Experts also believed that the Games would help the world to be a more peaceful place. So, in 1896, The first modern Games took place in Greece. Since the modern Olympics began over a hundred years ago, athletes have been getting faster and stronger and, at every Games , world records have been broken.

17-My favourite subject

School subjects are very important. We should study them hard. They provide us with a lot of information. As for me , my favourite subject is English. It is the most important language in the world. A lot of things on the internet are in English. I study it at school. I have 5 lessons a week. I usually watch English films on TV to help me learn it. It helps me in my life. My teacher helps me to learn it. It is very useful . In the future , it will help me to find a good job. I like it very much.

18-A visit to the Pyramids

We all agree that going on picnics is very enjoyable. It renews our energy. It is also great fun. As for me I like going on picnics very much. The last time I went on a picnic was last week. I went to the Pyramids. I got up early in the morning. I took my mobile, some sandwiches, some juice. And of course some money. I went there with my friends. We went there by bus. We arrived at 10 o'clock. We saw a lot of tourists there. I took a lot of photos. We played and enjoyed very much. I rode a camel there. The Pyramids are very beautiful. I was very happy . it was a nice day.

19. An important invention / the computer

The computer has a lot of advantages. It can store a lot of information; it can do a lot of calculations in no time. it can pay wages, reserve seats on planes, design buildings, compose music and do many jobs. Doctors also use the computer widely in their job. But, it has also some disadvantages, it can waste our time if it is used foolishly or if it is used just for fun. it has also a bad effect on our health specially the sight. It also teaches the children violence through playing computer games. So it is a double-edged weapon.